



## Model Cooperative Agreement

The Model Cooperative Agreement is comprised of the following documents:

	Assistance Agreement
	Special Terms and Conditions
	Statement of Project Objectives and Milestone Summary Table
	Federal Assistance Reporting Checklist and Instructions
	Budget Information SF-424A
	Intellectual Property Provisions

Please note that for an actual award, documents may be added, removed and/or modified as required.

**ASSISTANCE AGREEMENT**

1. Award No.s DE-EE0006532d		2. Modification No.s	3. Effective Dates 2/19/2013d	4. CFDA No.s	
5. Awarded Tos		6. Sponsoring Offices		7. Period of Performances	
8. Type of Agreements <input type="checkbox"/> Grants <input type="checkbox"/> Cooperative Agreements <input type="checkbox"/> Others		9. Authoritys		10. Purchase Request or Funding Document No.s	
11. Remittance Address		12. Total Amounts Govt. Share: \$0.00d  Cost Share : \$0.00d  Total : \$0.00d		13. Funds Obligateds This action: \$0.00d  Total : \$0.00d	
14. Principal Investigators		15. Program Managers		16. Administratsrs Golden Field Officed U.S. Department of Energyd Golden Field Office 5013 Denver West Parkway Golden CO 80401	
17. Submit Payment Requests Tos		18. Paying Offices		19. Submit Reports Tos	
20. Accounting and Appropriation Datas See Scheduled					
21. Research Title and/or Description of Project s					
For the Recipients			For the United States of Americas		
22. Signature of Person Authorized to Signs			25. Signature of Grants/Agreements Officers		
23. Name and Titles		24. Date Signeds	26. Name of Officers		27. Date Signeds

**CONTINUATION SHEET**

REFERENCE NO. OF DOCUMENT BEING CONTINUEDs

DE-EE0006532d

PAGEs OFs

2 d | 2

AME OF OFFEROR OR CONTRACTORs

ITEM NO.s (A)s	SUPPLIES/SERVICESs (B)s	QUANTITYs (C)s	UNITs (D)	UNIT PRICEs (E)s	AMOUNTs (F)
	DUNS Number: Not Available ASAP: YESd				



## Special Terms and Conditions

\_\_\_\_\_ (“Recipient”), which is identified in Block 5 of the Assistance Agreement, and the Office of Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy (“EERE”), an office within the United States Department of Energy (“DOE”), enter into this Award, referenced above, to achieve the project objectives and the technical milestones and deliverables stated in Attachment 1 to this Award.

This Award consists of the following documents, including all terms and conditions therein:

	Assistance Agreement
	Special Terms and Conditions
Attachment 1	Statement of Project Objectives and Milestone Summary Table
Attachment 2	Federal Assistance Reporting Checklist and Instructions
Attachment 3	Budget Information SF-424A
Attachment 4	Intellectual Property Provisions
Attachment 5	<i>[additional attachments]</i>

The following are incorporated into this Award by reference:

- DOE Assistance Regulations, 2 CFR part 200 as amended by 2 CFR part 910 at <http://www.eCFR.gov>.
- Research Terms & Conditions and the DOE Agency Specific Requirements at <http://www.nsf.gov/bfa/dias/policy/rtc/index.jsp> (if the Award is for research and the Award is to a university or non-profit).
- National Policy Assurances, to be incorporated as Award Terms in effect on date of award at <http://www.nsf.gov/awards/managing/rtc.jsp>.
- The Recipient’s application/proposal as approved by EERE.
- Applicable program regulations at <http://www.eCFR.gov>

## Table of Contents

<b>Subpart A. General Provisions .....</b>	<b>1</b>
Term 1. Legal Authority and Effect .....	1
Term 2. Flow Down Requirement .....	1
Term 3. Compliance with Federal, State, and Municipal Law .....	1
Term 4. Inconsistency with Federal Law .....	1
Term 5. Federal Stewardship .....	1
Term 6. Substantial Involvement .....	1
Term 7. Federal Involvement.....	2
Term 8. NEPA Requirements .....	3
Term 9. Performance of Work in United States .....	4
Term 10. Notice Regarding the Purchase of American-Made Equipment and Products – Sense of Congress ...	5
Term 11. Reporting Requirements .....	5
Term 12. Lobbying.....	5
Term 13. Publications .....	5
Term 14. No-Cost Extension .....	6
Term 15. Property Standards.....	6
Term 16. Insurance Coverage .....	6
Term 17. Real Property .....	6
Term 18. Federally Owned Property (Government-Furnished).....	7
Term 19. Equipment .....	7
Term 20. Supplies.....	8
Term 21. Property Trust Relationship .....	8
Term 22. Record Retention.....	8
Term 23. Audits.....	8
Term 24. Indemnity.....	9
<b>Subpart B. Financial Provisions .....</b>	<b>9</b>
Term 25. Maximum Obligation.....	9
Term 26. Funding of Budget Periods .....	9
Term 27. Continuation Application and Funding .....	10
Term 29. Direct Payment by DOE of Federally Funded Research and Development Center (FFRDC) Cost .....	12
Term 30. Refund Obligation.....	12
Term 31. Allowable Costs .....	12
Term 32. Indirect Costs .....	12
Term 33. Decontamination and/or Decommissioning (D&D) Costs.....	13
Term 34. Pre-Award Costs .....	13
Term 35. Use of Program Income .....	13
Term 36. Payment Procedures .....	14
Term 37. Budget Changes .....	15
<b>Subpart C. Miscellaneous Provisions .....</b>	<b>16</b>
Term 38. Environmental, Safety and Health Performance of Work at DOE Facilities .....	16
Term 39. Corporate Felony Conviction and Federal Tax Liability Assurances.....	16
Term 40. Insolvency, Bankruptcy or Receivership .....	16
Term 41. Reporting Subawards and Executive Compensation.....	17
Term 42. System for Award Management and Universal Identifier Requirements .....	21
Term 43. Nondisclosure and Confidentiality Agreements Assurances .....	23
Term 44. National Security: Classifiable Results Originating Under an Award.....	24

**Term 45. Subrecipient Change Notification ..... 25**  
**Term 46. Conference Spending..... 26**  
**Term 47. Subawards to DOE National Laboratories ..... 26**  
**Term 48. Recipient Integrity and Performance Matters..... 27**

## **Subpart A. General Provisions**

### **Term 1. Legal Authority and Effect**

A DOE financial assistance award is valid only if it is in writing and is signed, either in writing or electronically, by a DOE Contracting Officer.

The Recipient may accept or reject the Award. A request to draw down DOE funds or acknowledgement of award documents by the Recipient's authorized representative through electronic systems used by DOE, specifically FedConnect, constitutes the Recipient's acceptance of the terms and conditions of this Award. Acknowledgement via FedConnect by the Recipient's authorized representative constitutes the Recipient's electronic signature.

### **Term 2. Flow Down Requirement**

The Recipient agrees to apply the terms and conditions of this Award, as applicable, including the Intellectual Property Provisions, to all subrecipients (and subcontractors, as appropriate), as required by 2 CFR 200.101, and to require their strict compliance therewith. Further, the Recipient must apply the Award terms as required by 2 CFR 200.326 to all subrecipients (and subcontractors, as appropriate), and to require their strict compliance therewith.

### **Term 3. Compliance with Federal, State, and Municipal Law**

The Recipient is required to comply with applicable Federal, state, and local laws and regulations for all work performed under this Award. The Recipient is required to obtain all necessary Federal, state, and local permits, authorizations, and approvals for all work performed under this Award.

### **Term 4. Inconsistency with Federal Law**

Any apparent inconsistency between Federal statutes and regulations and the terms and conditions contained in this Award must be referred to the DOE Award Administrator for guidance.

### **Term 5. Federal Stewardship**

EERE will exercise normal Federal stewardship in overseeing the project activities performed under this Award. Stewardship activities include, but are not limited to, conducting site visits; reviewing performance and financial reports; providing technical assistance and/or temporary intervention in unusual circumstances to address deficiencies that develop during the project; assuring compliance with terms and conditions; and reviewing technical performance after project completion to ensure that the project objectives have been accomplished.

### **Term 6. Substantial Involvement**

EERE has substantial involvement in work performed under this Award. EERE does not limit its involvement to the administrative requirements of this Award. Instead, EERE has substantial involvement in the direction and redirection of the technical aspects of the project as a whole.

Substantial involvement includes the following:

- EERE shares responsibility with the Recipient for the management, control, direction, and performance of the Project.
- EERE may intervene in the conduct or performance of work under this Award for programmatic reasons. Intervention includes the interruption or modification of the conduct or performance of project activities.
- EERE may redirect or discontinue funding the Project based on the outcome of EERE's evaluation of the Project at the Go/No Go decision point.
- EERE participates in major project decision-making processes.

## **Term 7. Federal Involvement**

### **A. Review Meetings**

The Recipient, including but not limited to, the principal investigator (or, if applicable, co-principal investigators), is required to participate in periodic review meetings with EERE. Review meetings enable EERE to assess the work performed under this Award and determine whether the Recipient has timely achieved the technical milestones and deliverables stated in Attachment 1 to this Award.

EERE shall determine the frequency of review meetings and select the day, time, and location of each review meeting and shall do so in a reasonable and good faith manner. EERE will provide the Recipient with reasonable notice of the review meetings.

For each review meeting, the Recipient is required to provide a comprehensive overview of the project, including:

- The Recipient's technical progress compared to the Milestone Summary Table stated in Attachment 1 to this Award;
- The Recipient's actual expenditures compared to the approved budget in Attachment 3 to this Award; and
- Other subject matter specified by the DOE Technology Manager/Project Officer.

### **B. Project Meetings**

The Recipient is required to notify EERE in advance of scheduled tests and internal project meetings that would entail discussion of topics that could result in major changes to the baseline project technical scope/approach, cost, or schedule. Upon request by EERE, the Recipient is required to provide EERE with reasonable access (by telephone, webinar, or otherwise) to the tests and project meetings. The Recipient is not expected to delay any work under this Award for the purpose of government insight.



**C. Site Visits**

EERE's authorized representatives have the right to make site visits at reasonable times to review project accomplishments and management control systems and to provide technical assistance, if required. The Recipient must provide, and must require subrecipients to provide, reasonable access to facilities, office space, resources, and assistance for the safety and convenience of the government representatives in the performance of their duties. All site visits and evaluations must be performed in a manner that does not unduly interfere with or delay the work.

**D. Go/No Go Decisions**

Attachment 1 to this Award establishes Go/No Go decision points. For each Go/No Go decision point, EERE must determine whether the Recipient has fully and satisfactorily completed the work described in Attachment 1 to this Award. As a result of a Go/No Go review, in its discretion, EERE may take one of the following actions:

- Authorize Federal funding for the next budget period for the Project;
- Recommend redirection of work under the Project;
- Place a hold on the Federal funding for the Project, pending further supporting data; or
- Discontinue providing Federal funding for the Project beyond the current budget period as the result of insufficient progress, change in strategic direction, or lack of available funding.

**E. Technical Milestones and Deliverables**

Attachment 1 to this Award establishes technical milestones and deliverables. If the Recipient fails to achieve two or more technical milestones and deliverables, EERE may renegotiate the Statement of Project Objectives and/or Milestone Summary Table in Attachment 1 to this Award. In the alternative, EERE may deem the Recipient's failure to achieve these technical milestones and deliverables to be material noncompliance with the terms and conditions of this Award and take action to suspend or terminate the Award.

**F. EERE Access**

The Recipient must provide any information, documents, site access, or other assistance requested by EERE for the purpose of its Federal stewardship or substantial involvement.

**Term 8. NEPA Requirements**

DOE must comply with the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) prior to authorizing the use of Federal funds. Based on all information provided by the Recipient, EERE has made a NEPA determination by issuing a categorical exclusion (CX) for all activities listed in the Statement of Project Objectives (SOPO) approved by the Contracting Officer and the DOE NEPA

Determination. The Recipient is thereby authorized to use Federal funds for the defined project activities. This authorization is specific to the project activities and locations as described in the SOPO approved by the Contracting Officer and the DOE NEPA Determination.

***If the Recipient later intends to add to or modify the activities or locations*** as described in the approved SOPO and the DOE NEPA Determination, those new activities/locations or modified activities/locations are subject to additional NEPA review and are not authorized for Federal funding until the Contracting Officer provides written authorization on those additions or modifications. Should the Recipient elect to undertake activities or change locations prior to written authorization from the Contracting Officer, the Recipient does so at risk of not receiving Federal funding for those activities, and such costs may not be recognized as allowable cost share.

## **Term 9. Performance of Work in United States**

### **A. Requirement**

All work performed under this Award must be performed in the United States unless the Contracting Officer provides a waiver. This requirement does not apply to the purchase of supplies and equipment; however, the Recipient should make every effort to purchase supplies and equipment within the United States. The Recipient must flow down this requirement to its subrecipients.

### **B. Failure to Comply**

If the Recipient fails to comply with the Performance of Work in the United States requirement, the Contracting Officer may deny reimbursement for the work conducted outside the United States and such costs may not be recognized as allowable Recipient cost share regardless if the work is performed by the Recipient, subrecipients, vendors or other project partners.

### **C. Waiver for Work Outside the U.S.**

All work performed under this Award must be performed in the United States. However, the Contracting Officer may approve the Recipient to perform a portion of the work outside the United States under limited circumstances. Recipient must obtain a waiver from the Contracting Officer prior to conducting any work outside the U.S. To request a waiver, the Recipient must submit a written waiver request to the Contracting Officer, which includes the following information:

- The rationale for performing the work outside the U.S.;
- A description of the work proposed to be performed outside the U.S.;
- Proposed budget of work to be performed; and
- The countries in which the work is proposed to be performed.

For the rationale, the Recipient must demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Contracting Officer that the performance of work outside the United States would

further the purposes of the FOA that the Award was selected under and is in the economic interests of the United States. The Contracting Officer may require additional information before considering such request.

### **Term 10. Notice Regarding the Purchase of American-Made Equipment and Products – Sense of Congress**

It is the sense of the Congress that, to the greatest extent practicable, all equipment and products purchased with funds made available under this Award should be American-made.

### **Term 11. Reporting Requirements**

#### **A. Requirements**

The reporting requirements for this Award are identified on the Federal Assistance Reporting Checklist, attached to this Award. Failure to comply with these reporting requirements is considered a material noncompliance with the terms of the Award. Noncompliance may result in withholding of future payments, suspension, or termination of the current award, and withholding of future awards. A willful failure to perform, a history of failure to perform, or unsatisfactory performance of this and/or other financial assistance awards, may also result in a debarment action to preclude future awards by Federal agencies.

#### **B. Dissemination of scientific/technical reports**

Scientific/technical reports submitted under this Award will be disseminated on the Internet via the DOE Information Bridge ([www.osti.gov/bridge](http://www.osti.gov/bridge)), unless the report contains patentable material, protected data or SBIR/STTR data. Citations for journal articles produced under the Award will appear on the DOE Energy Citations Database ([www.osti.gov/energycitations](http://www.osti.gov/energycitations)).

#### **C. Restrictions**

Reports submitted to the DOE Information Bridge must not contain any Protected Personal Identifiable Information (PII), limited rights data (proprietary data), classified information, information subject to export control classification, or other information not subject to release.

### **Term 12. Lobbying**

By accepting funds under this Award, the Recipient agrees that none of the funds obligated on the Award shall be expended, directly or indirectly, to influence congressional action on any legislation or appropriation matters pending before Congress, other than to communicate to Members of Congress as described in 18 U.S.C. § 1913. This restriction is in addition to those prescribed elsewhere in statute and regulation.

### **Term 13. Publications**

EERE encourages the Recipient to publish or otherwise make publicly available the results of work performed under this Award. The Recipient is required to include the following acknowledgement in publications arising out of, or relating to, work performed under this Award, whether copyrighted or not:

- *Acknowledgment:* “This material is based upon work supported by the Department of Energy, Office of Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy (EERE), under Award Number DE-\_\_\_\_\_.”
- *Disclaimer:* “This report was prepared as an account of work sponsored by an agency of the United States Government. Neither the United States Government nor any agency thereof, nor any of their employees, makes any warranty, express or implied, or assumes any legal liability or responsibility for the accuracy, completeness, or usefulness of any information, apparatus, product, or process disclosed, or represents that its use would not infringe privately owned rights. Reference herein to any specific commercial product, process, or service by trade name, trademark, manufacturer, or otherwise does not necessarily constitute or imply its endorsement, recommendation, or favoring by the United States Government or any agency thereof. The views and opinions of authors expressed herein do not necessarily state or reflect those of the United States Government or any agency thereof.”

#### **Term 14. No-Cost Extension**

As provided in 2 CFR 200.308, the Recipient must provide the Contracting Officer with notice in advance if it intends to utilize a one-time, no-cost extension of this Award. The notification must include the supporting reasons and the revised period of performance. The Recipient must submit this notification in writing to the Contracting Officer and DOE Technology Manager/ Project Officer at least 30 days before the end of the current budget period.

Any no-cost extension will not alter the project scope, milestones, deliverables, or budget of this Award.

#### **Term 15. Property Standards**

The complete text of the Property Standards can be found at 2 CFR 200.310 through 200.316. Also see 2 CFR 910.360 for additional requirements for real property and equipment for For-Profit recipients.

#### **Term 16. Insurance Coverage**

See 2 CFR 200.310 for insurance requirements for real property and equipment acquired or improved with Federal funds. Also see 2 CFR 910.360(d) for additional requirements for real property and equipment for For-Profit recipients.

#### **Term 17. Real Property**

Subject to the conditions set forth in 2 CFR 200.311, title to real property acquired or improved under a Federal award will conditionally vest upon acquisition in the non-Federal entity. The non-Federal entity cannot encumber this property and must follow the requirements of 2 CFR 200.311 before disposing of the property.

Except as otherwise provided by Federal statutes or by the Federal awarding agency, real property will be used for the originally authorized purpose as long as needed for that purpose. When real property is no longer needed for the originally authorized purpose, the non-Federal entity must obtain disposition instructions from DOE or pass-through entity. The instructions must provide for one of the following alternatives: (1) retain title after compensating DOE as described in 2 CFR 200.311(c)(1); (2) Sell the property and compensate DOE as specified in 2 CFR 200.311(c)(2); or (3) transfer title to DOE or to a third party designated/approved by DOE as specified in 2 CFR 200.311(c)(3).

See 2 CFR 200.311 for additional requirements pertaining to real property acquired or improved under a Federal award. Also see 2 CFR 910.360 for additional requirements for real property for For-Profit recipients.

#### **Term 18. Federally Owned Property (Government-Furnished)**

See Attachment [\[insert\]](#) or a listing of Federally-owned property accountable under this Award. Title to Federally owned property remains vested in the Federal government. Federally-owned property shall be managed in accordance with 2 CFR 200.312 and reported as prescribed in the Federal Assistance Reporting Checklist and Instructions.

#### **Term 19. Equipment**

Subject to the conditions provided in 2 CFR 200.313, title to equipment (property) acquired under a Federal award will conditionally vest upon acquisition with the non-Federal entity. The non-Federal entity cannot encumber this property and must follow the requirements of 2 CFR 200.313 before disposing of the property.

A state must use equipment acquired under a Federal award by the state in accordance with state laws and procedures.

Equipment must be used by the non-Federal entity in the program or project for which it was acquired as long as it is needed, whether or not the project or program continues to be supported by the Federal award. When no longer needed for the originally authorized purpose, the equipment may be used by programs supported by DOE in the priority order specified in 2 CFR 200.313(c)(1)(i) and (ii).

Management requirements, including inventory and control systems, for equipment are provided in 2 CFR 200.313(d).

When equipment acquired under a Federal award is no longer needed, the non-Federal entity must obtain disposition instructions from DOE or pass-through entity.

Disposition will be made as follows: (1) items of equipment with a current fair market value of \$5,000 or less may be retained, sold, or otherwise disposed of with no further obligation to DOE; (2) Non-Federal entity may retain title or sell the equipment after compensating DOE as described in 2 CFR 200.313(e)(2); or (3) transfer title to DOE or to an eligible third party as specified in 2 CFR 200.313(e)(3).

See 2 CFR 200.313 for additional requirements pertaining to equipment acquired under a Federal award. Also see 2 CFR 910.360 for additional requirements for equipment for For-Profit recipients. See also 2 CFR 200.439 Equipment and other capital expenditures.

### **Term 20. Supplies**

See 2 CFR 200.314 for requirements pertaining to supplies acquired under a Federal award. See also 2 CFR 200.453 Materials and supplies costs, including costs of computing devices.

### **Term 21. Property Trust Relationship**

Real property, equipment, and intangible property, that are acquired or improved with a Federal award must be held in trust by the non-Federal entity as trustee for the beneficiaries of the project or program under which the property was acquired or improved. See 2 CFR 200.316 for additional requirements pertaining to real property, equipment, and intangible property acquired or improved under a Federal award.

### **Term 22. Record Retention**

Consistent with 2 CFR 200.333 through 200.337, the Recipient is required to retain records relating to this Award.

### **Term 23. Audits**

#### **A. Government-Initiated Audits**

The Recipient is required to provide any information, documents, site access, or other assistance requested by EERE, DOE or Federal auditing agencies (e.g., DOE Inspector General, Government Accountability Office) for the purpose of audits and investigations. Such assistance may include, but is not limited to, reasonable access to the Recipient's records relating to this Award.

Consistent with 2 CFR part 200 as amended by 2 CFR part 910, DOE may audit the Recipient's financial records or administrative records relating to this Award at any time. Government-initiated audits are generally paid for by DOE.

DOE may conduct a final audit at the end of the project period (or the termination of the Award, if applicable). Upon completion of the audit, the Recipient is required to

refund to DOE any payments for costs that were determined to be unallowable. If the audit has not been performed or completed prior to the closeout of the award, DOE retains the right to recover an appropriate amount after fully considering the recommendations on disallowed costs resulting from the final audit.

DOE will provide reasonable advance notice of audits and will minimize interference with ongoing work, to the maximum extent practicable.

#### **B. Annual Compliance Audits**

The Recipient is required to comply with the annual compliance audit requirements in 2 CFR 200.500 through 521 for institutions of higher education, nonprofit organizations and state and local governments, and 2 CFR 910.500 through 521 for for-profit entities. The annual compliance audits are independent from Government-initiated audits discussed in paragraph A of this Term, and must be paid for by the Recipient. To minimize expense, the Recipient may have a compliance audit in conjunction with its annual audit of financial statements.

#### **Term 24. Indemnity**

The Recipient shall indemnify DOE and its officers, agents, or employees for any and all liability, including litigation expenses and attorneys' fees, arising from suits, actions, or claims of any character for death, bodily injury, or loss of or damage to property or to the environment, resulting from the project, except to the extent that such liability results from the direct fault or negligence of DOE officers, agents or employees, or to the extent such liability may be covered by applicable allowable costs provisions.

### **Subpart B. Financial Provisions**

#### **Term 25. Maximum Obligation**

The maximum obligation of DOE for this Award is the total "Funds Obligated" stated in Block 13 of the Assistance Agreement to this Award.

#### **Term 26. Funding of Budget Periods**

EERE has obligated funding as shown in Block 13 of the Assistance Agreement for completion of the Project. However, only the Federal share of costs associated with the current Period of Performance is available for work performed by the Recipient. The Federal share of costs is shown on Attachment 3. The current Period of Performance is shown in Block 7 of the Assistance Agreement.

The remainder of funding is contingent upon: (1) availability of Federal funds appropriated by Congress for the purpose of this program; (2) the availability of future-year budget authority; (3) Recipient's technical progress compared to the Milestone Summary Table stated in Attachment 1 to this Award; (4) Recipient's submittal of required reports; (5) Recipient's

compliance with the terms and conditions of the Award; (6) EERE's Go/No-Go decision; (7) the Recipient's submission of a continuation application; and (8) written approval of the continuation application by the Contracting Officer.

In the event that the Recipient does not submit a continuation application for subsequent Budget Periods, or EERE disapproves a continuation application for subsequent Budget Periods, the maximum EERE liability to the Recipient is the funds that are available for the current approved Budget Period(s). In such event, EERE reserves the right to deobligate any remaining Federal funds.

## **Term 27. Continuation Application and Funding**

### **A. Continuation Application**

A continuation application is a non-competitive application for an additional budget period within a previously approved project period. At least ninety days before the end of each budget period, the Recipient must submit to the DOE Technology Manager/Project Officer and the DOE Award Administrator its continuation application, which includes the following information:

- i. A report on the Recipient's progress towards meeting the objectives of the project, including any significant findings, conclusions, or developments, and an estimate of any unobligated balances remaining at the end of the budget period. If the remaining unobligated balance is estimated to exceed 20 percent of the funds available for the budget period, explain why the excess funds have not been obligated and how they will be used in the next budget period.
- ii. A detailed budget and supporting justification if there are changes to the negotiated budget, or a budget for the upcoming budget period was not approved at the time of award.
- iii. A description of any planned changes from the negotiated Statement of Project Objectives and/or Milestone Summary Table.

### **B. Continuation Funding**

Continuation funding is contingent on (1) the availability of funds appropriated by Congress for the purpose of this program; (2) the availability of future-year budget authority; (3) Recipient's technical progress compared to the Milestone Summary Table stated in Attachment 1 to this Award; (4) Recipient's submittal of required reports; (5) Recipient's compliance with the terms and conditions of the Award; (6) EERE's Go/No-Go decision; (7) the Recipient's submission of a continuation application; and (8) written approval of the continuation application by the Contracting Officer.



- C. EERE waives prior written approval requirements to carry forward unobligated balances to subsequent periods of performance.

**Term 28. Cost Sharing**

**A. Cost Sharing Obligations**

The Recipient must provide the “Cost Share” amount stated in Block 12 of the Assistance Agreement to this Award. EERE and the Recipient’s cost share for the total estimated project costs are listed below.

**Table 1**

EERE Cost Share \$ / %	Recipient Cost Share \$ / %	Total Estimated Project Costs
\$	\$	\$

The Recipient must provide its required “Cost Share” amount as a percentage of the total project costs in each invoice period for the duration of the project period. Specifically, the cumulative cost share percentage provided to date on each invoice received must reflect, at a minimum, the cost sharing percentage specified in the Award.

**B. Cost Share Obligation If Award Terminated or Discontinued**

If the Award is terminated or is otherwise not funded to completion, the Recipient is not required to provide the entire “Cost Share” amount stated in Block 12 of the Assistance Agreement to this Award; however, the Recipient must provide its share (i.e., percentage as shown in Table 1 above) of the total project cost reimbursed as of the date of the termination or discontinuation.

**C. Source of Cost Share**

The Recipient may not use Federal funds to meet its cost sharing obligations, unless otherwise allowed by Federal law.

**D. Inability to Comply with Cost Sharing Obligations**

If the Recipient determines that it is unable to meet its cost sharing obligations, the Recipient must notify the DOE Award Administrator in writing immediately. The notification must include the following information: (1) whether the Recipient intends to continue or phase out the project, and (2) if the Recipient intends to continue the project, how the Recipient will pay (or secure replacement funding for) the Recipient’s share of the total project cost.

If the Recipient fails to meet its cost sharing obligations, EERE may recover some or all of the financial assistance provided under this Award. The amount EERE would seek to recover under this Term would be predicated on EERE’s analysis of the

Recipient's compliance with their cost sharing obligation under the Award.

**Term 29. Direct Payment by DOE of Federally Funded Research and Development Center (FFRDC) Cost**

For the purposes of this term, Total Estimated Cost of Project includes DOE FFRDC costs. The DOE FFRDC cost is not included in the total approved budget for this Award, because DOE will pay the DOE FFRDC portion of the effort under an existing DOE contract. The Recipient is not responsible for reporting on that portion of the total estimated cost that is paid directly to the DOE FFRDC.

**Term 30. Refund Obligation**

The Recipient must refund any excess payments received from EERE, including any costs determined unallowable by the Contracting Officer. Upon the end of the project period (or the termination of the Award, if applicable), the Recipient must refund to EERE the difference between (1) the total payments received from EERE, and (2) the Federal share of the costs incurred.

**Term 31. Allowable Costs**

EERE determines the allowability of costs through reference to 2 CFR part 200 as amended by 2 CFR part 910. All project costs must be allowable, allocable, and reasonable. The Recipient must document and maintain records of all project costs, including, but not limited to, the costs paid by Federal funds, costs claimed by its subrecipients and project costs that the Recipient claims as cost sharing, including in-kind contributions. The Recipient is responsible for maintaining records adequate to demonstrate that costs claimed have been incurred, are reasonable, allowable and allocable, and comply with the cost principles. Upon request, the Recipient is required to provide such records to EERE. Such records are subject to audit. Failure to provide EERE adequate supporting documentation may result in a determination by the Contracting Officer that those costs are unallowable.

The Recipient is required to obtain the prior written approval of the Contracting Officer for any foreign travel costs.

**Term 32. Indirect Costs**

The Recipient has a Federally approved negotiated indirect cost rate agreement of \_\_\_\_% and it applies uniformly across all Federal awards.

**A. Lower-than-Expected Indirect Costs**

If the Recipient's actual allowable indirect costs are less than those budgeted in Attachment 3 to this Award, the Recipient may use the difference to pay additional allowable direct costs during the project period. If at the completion of the award the Government share of total allowable costs (i.e., direct and indirect) is less than the cost reimbursed, the Recipient must refund the difference.

**B. Higher-than-Expected Indirect Costs**

The Recipient understands that it is solely and exclusively responsible for managing its indirect costs. The Recipient further understands that EERE will not amend this Award solely to provide additional funds to cover increases in the Recipient's indirect cost rate.

EERE recognizes that the Recipient may not be fully reimbursed for increases in its indirect cost rate, which may result in under-recovery. In the event that the Recipient is not fully reimbursed for increases in its indirect cost rate, the Recipient may use any under-recovery to meet its cost sharing obligations under this Award.

**C. Subrecipient Indirect Costs**

The Recipient must ensure its subrecipient's indirect costs are appropriately managed, allowable and otherwise comply with the requirements of this Award and 2 CFR part 200 as amended by 2 CFR part 910.

**Term 33. Decontamination and/or Decommissioning (D&D) Costs**

Notwithstanding any other provisions of this Award, the Government shall not be responsible for or have any obligation to the Recipient for (1) Decontamination and/or Decommissioning (D&D) of any of the Recipient's facilities, or (2) any costs which may be incurred by the Recipient in connection with the D&D of any of its facilities due to the performance of the work under this Award, whether said work was performed prior to or subsequent to the effective date of the Award.

**Term 34. Pre-Award Costs**

As stated in the Contracting Officer's Pre-Award Costs Letter dated \_\_\_\_\_, the Recipient is authorized to request reimbursement for costs incurred on or after \_\_\_\_\_, if: (1) such costs are allowable in accordance with 2 CFR part 200 as amended by 2 CFR part 910, (2) such costs are not otherwise restricted by Term titled "National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) Requirements," and (3) such costs are not otherwise restricted by any other Term. If the Recipient elects to undertake activities that are not authorized for Federal funding by the Contracting Officer in advance of DOE completing the NEPA review, the Recipient is doing so at risk of not receiving Federal funding and such costs may not be recognized as allowable cost share. Nothing contained in the pre-award cost reimbursement regulations or any pre-award costs approval letter from the Contracting Officer override these NEPA requirements to obtain the written authorization from the Contracting Officer prior to taking any action that may have an adverse effect on the environment or limit the choice of reasonable alternatives.

**Term 35. Use of Program Income**

If the Recipient earns program income during the project period as a result of this Award, the Recipient must add the program income to the funds committed to the Award and used to further eligible project objectives.

## **Term 36. Payment Procedures**

### **A. Method of Payment**

Payment will be made by reimbursement through ACH.

### **B. Requesting Reimbursement**

Requests for reimbursements must be made electronically through Department of Energy's Oak Ridge Financial Service Center (ORFSC) VIPERS. To access and use VIPERS, the Recipient must enroll at <https://vipers.doe.gov>. Detailed instructions on how to enroll are provided on the web site.

For non-construction awards, the Recipient must submit a Standard Form (SF) 270, "Request for Advance or Reimbursement," at <https://vipers.doe.gov> and attach a file containing appropriate supporting documentation. The file attachment must show the total Federal share claimed on the SF 270, the non-Federal share claimed for the billing period if cost sharing is required, and cumulative expenditures to date (both Federal and non-Federal) for each of the following categories: personnel; fringe benefits; equipment; travel; supplies; contractual; other direct costs; and indirect costs. For construction awards, the Recipient must submit a SF 271, "Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs," through VIPERS.

### **C. Timing of Submittals**

Submittal of the SF 270 or SF 271 should coincide with the Recipient's normal billing pattern, but not more frequently than every two weeks. Requests for reimbursement must be limited to the amount of disbursements made during the billing period for the Federal share of direct project costs and the proportionate share of any allowable indirect costs incurred during that billing period.

### **D. Adjusting Payment Requests for Available Cash**

The Recipient must disburse any funds that are available from repayments to and interest earned on a revolving fund, program income, rebates, refunds, contract settlements, audit recoveries, credits, discounts, and interest earned on any of those funds before requesting additional cash payments from EERE.

### **E. Payments**

The EERE approving official will approve the invoice as soon as practical, but not later than 30 days after the Recipient's request is received, unless the billing is improper. Upon receipt of an invoice payment authorization from the EERE approving official, the ORFSC will disburse payment to the Recipient. The Recipient may check the status of payments at the VIPERS web site. All payments are made by

electronic funds transfer to the bank account specified on the Bank Information Form that you filed with the U.S. Department of Treasury.

**F. Supporting Documents for Agency Approval of Payments**

The EERE payment authorizing official may request additional information from the Recipient to support the payment requests prior to release of funds, as deemed necessary. Recipient is required to comply with these requests. Supporting documents include invoices, copies of contracts, vendor quotes, and other expenditure explanations that justify the reimbursement requests.

**G. Unauthorized Drawdown of Federal Funds**

For each budget period, the Recipient may not spend more than the Federal share authorized to that particular budget period, without specific written approval from the Contracting Officer. The Recipient must immediately refund EERE any amounts spent or drawn down in excess of the authorized amount for a budget period. The Recipient and subrecipients shall promptly, but at least quarterly, remit to DOE interest earned on advances drawn in excess of disbursement needs, and shall comply with the procedure for remitting interest earned to the Federal government per 2 CFR 200.305, as applicable.

**Term 37. Budget Changes**

**A. Budget Changes Generally**

The Contracting Officer has reviewed and approved the SF-424A in Attachment 3 to this Award.

Any increase in the total project cost, whether DOE share or Cost Share, which is stated as “Total” in Block 12 to the Assistance Agreement of this Award, must be approved in advance and in writing by the Contracting Officer.

Any budget change that alters the project scope, milestones or deliverables requires prior written approval of the Contracting Officer. EERE may deny reimbursement for any failure to comply with the requirements in this term.

**B. Transfers of Funds Among Direct Cost Categories**

The Recipient is required to obtain the prior written approval of the Contracting Officer for any transfer of funds among direct cost categories where the cumulative amount of such transfers exceeds or is expected to exceed 10 percent of the total project cost, which is stated as “Total” in Block 12 to the Assistance Agreement of this Award.

The Recipient is required to notify the DOE Technology Manager/Project Officer of any transfer of funds among direct cost categories where the cumulative amount of

such transfers is equal to or below 10 percent of the total project cost, which is stated as “Total” in Block 12 to the Assistance Agreement of this Award.

**C. Transfer of Funds Between Direct and Indirect Cost Categories**

The Recipient is required to obtain the prior written approval of the Contracting Officer for any transfer of funds between direct and indirect cost categories.

## **Subpart C. Miscellaneous Provisions**

### **Term 38. Environmental, Safety and Health Performance of Work at DOE Facilities**

With respect to the performance of any portion of the work under this Award which is performed at a DOE -owned or controlled site, the Recipient agrees to comply with all State and Federal Environmental, Safety and Health (ES&H) regulations and with all other ES&H requirements of the operator of such site.

Prior to the performance on any work at a DOE-owned or controlled site, the Recipient shall contact the site facility manager for information on DOE and site specific ES&H requirements.

The Recipient is required apply this provision to its subrecipients and contractors.

### **Term 39. Corporate Felony Conviction and Federal Tax Liability Assurances**

This term applies to Recipients that are organized as corporations. A corporation includes any entity that has filed articles of incorporation in any of the 50 states, the District of Columbia, or the various territories of the United States, but not foreign corporations. It includes both for-profit and non-profit organizations.

By entering into this Award, the Recipient attests that its corporation has not been convicted of a felony criminal violation under Federal law in the 24 months preceding the date of signature.

The Recipient further attests that its corporation does not have any unpaid Federal tax liability that has been assessed, for which all judicial and administrative remedies have been exhausted or have lapsed, and that is not being paid in a timely manner pursuant to an agreement with the authority responsible for collecting the tax liability.

### **Term 40. Insolvency, Bankruptcy or Receivership**

- A. The Recipient shall immediately, but no later than five days, notify EERE of the occurrence of any of the following events: (1) the Recipient or the Recipient’s parent’s filing of a voluntary case seeking liquidation or reorganization under the Bankruptcy Act; (2) the Recipient’s consent to the institution of an involuntary case under the Bankruptcy Act against the Recipient or the Recipient’s parent; (3) the filing of any similar proceeding for or against the Recipient or the Recipient’s parent,

- or the Recipient's consent to the dissolution, winding-up or readjustment of its debts, appointment of a receiver, conservator, trustee, or other officer with similar powers over the Recipient, under any other applicable state or Federal law; or (4) the Recipient's insolvency due to its inability to pay debts generally as they become due.
- B. Such notification shall be in writing and shall: (1) specifically set out the details of the occurrence of an event referenced in paragraph A; (2) provide the facts surrounding that event; and (3) provide the impact such event will have on the project being funded by this Award.
- C. Upon the occurrence of any of the four events described in paragraph A. of this term, EERE reserves the right to conduct a review of the Recipient's Award to determine the Recipient's compliance with the required elements of the Award (including such items as cost share, progress towards technical project objectives, and submission of required reports). If the EERE review determines that there are significant deficiencies or concerns with the Recipient's performance under the Award, EERE reserves the right to impose additional requirements, as needed, including (1) change of payment method; or (2) institute payment controls.
- D. Failure of the Recipient to comply with this term may be considered a material noncompliance of this Award by the Contracting Officer.

## **Term 41. Reporting Subawards and Executive Compensation**

### **A. Reporting of first-tier subawards**

- i. *Applicability.* Unless the Recipient is exempt as provided in paragraph D. of this award term, the Recipient must report each action that obligates \$25,000 or more in Federal funds that does not include Recovery funds (as defined in section 1512(a)(2) of the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009, Pub. L. 111-5) for a subaward to an entity (see definitions in paragraph E. of this award term).
- ii. *Where and when to report.*
1. The Recipient must report each obligating action described in paragraph A.i. of this award term to <https://www.fsrs.gov>.
  2. For subaward information, report no later than the end of the month following the month in which the obligation was made. (For example, if the obligation was made on November 7, 2010, the obligation must be reported by no later than December 31, 2010.)

- iii. *What to report.* The Recipient must report the information about each obligating action that the submission instructions posted at <https://www.fsrs.gov> specify.

## **B. Reporting Total Compensation of Recipient Executives**

- i. *Applicability and what to report.* The Recipient must report total compensation for each of its five most highly compensated executives for the preceding completed fiscal year, if
  1. The total Federal funding authorized to date under this Award is \$25,000 or more;
  2. In the preceding fiscal year, the Recipient received;
    - a. 80 percent or more of the Recipient’s annual gross revenues from Federal procurement contracts (and subcontracts) and Federal financial assistance subject to the Transparency Act, as defined at 2 CFR 170.320 (and subawards); and
    - b. \$25,000,000 or more in annual gross revenues from Federal procurement contracts (and subcontracts) and Federal financial assistance subject to the Transparency Act, as defined at 2 CFR 170.320 (and subawards); and
  3. The public does not have access to information about the compensation of the executives through periodic reports filed under section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78m(a), 78o(d)) or section 6104 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986. (To determine if the public has access to the compensation information, see the U.S. Security and Exchange Commission total compensation filings at <http://www.sec.gov/answers/excomp.htm>).
- ii. *Where and when to report.* The Recipient must report executive total compensation described in paragraph B.i. of this award term:
  1. As part of the Recipient’s registration profile at <https://www.sam.gov>.
  2. By the end of the month following the month in which this award is made, and annually thereafter.

## **C. Reporting of Total Compensation of Subrecipient Executives**



- i. *Applicability and what to report.* Unless the Recipient is exempt as provided in paragraph D. of this award term, for each first-tier subrecipient under this award, the Recipient shall report the names and total compensation of each of the subrecipient's five most highly compensated executives for the subrecipient's preceding completed fiscal year, if:
  1. In the subrecipient's preceding fiscal year, the subrecipient received:
    - a. 80 percent or more of its annual gross revenues from Federal procurement contracts (and subcontracts) and Federal financial assistance subject to the Transparency Act, as defined at 2 CFR 170.320 (and subawards); and
    - b. \$25,000,000 or more in annual gross revenues from Federal procurement contracts (and subcontracts), and Federal financial assistance subject to the Transparency Act (and subawards); and
  2. The public does not have access to information about the compensation of the executives through periodic reports filed under section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78m(a), 78o(d)) or section 6104 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986. (To determine if the public has access to the compensation information, see the U.S. Security and Exchange Commission total compensation filings at <http://www.sec.gov/answers/excomp.htm>).
- ii. *Where and when to report.* The Recipient must report subrecipient executive total compensation described in paragraph C.i. of this award term:
  1. To the recipient.
  2. By the end of the month following the month during which the Recipient makes the subaward. For example, if a subaward is obligated on any date during the month of October of a given year (*i.e.*, between October 1 and 31), the Recipient must report any required compensation information of the subrecipient by November 30 of that year.

#### **D. Exemptions**

If, in the previous tax year, the Recipient had gross income, from all sources, under \$300,000, it is exempt from the requirements to report:

- i. Subawards and;
- ii. The total compensation of the five most highly compensated executives of any subrecipient.

#### **E. Definitions**

For purposes of this Award term:

- i. Entity means all of the following, as defined in 2 CFR Part 25:
  - 1. A Governmental organization, which is a State, local government, or Indian tribe;
  - 2. A foreign public entity;
  - 3. A domestic or foreign nonprofit organization;
  - 4. A domestic or foreign for-profit organization;
  - 5. A Federal agency, but only as a subrecipient under an award or subaward to a non-Federal entity.
- ii. Executive means officers, managing partners, or any other employees in management positions.
- iii. Subaward:
  - 1. This term means a legal instrument to provide support for the performance of any portion of the substantive project or program for which the Recipient received this award and that the recipient awards to an eligible subrecipient.
  - 2. The term does not include the Recipient's procurement of property and services needed to carry out the project or program (for further explanation, see Sec. \_\_ .210 of the attachment to OMB Circular A-133, Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations).
  - 3. A subaward may be provided through any legal agreement, including an agreement that the Recipient or a subrecipient considers a contract.
- iv. Subrecipient means an entity that:
  - 1. Receives a subaward from the Recipient under this award; and
  - 2. Is accountable to the Recipient for the use of the Federal funds

provided by the subaward.

- v. Total compensation means the cash and noncash dollar value earned by the executive during the recipient's or subrecipient's preceding fiscal year and includes the following (for more information see 17 CFR 229.402(c)(2)):
  - 1. Salary and bonus.
  - 2. Awards of stock, stock options, and stock appreciation rights. Use the dollar amount recognized for financial statement reporting purposes with respect to the fiscal year in accordance with the Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 123 (Revised 2004) (FAS 123R), Shared Based Payments.
  - 3. Earnings for services under non-equity incentive plans. This does not include group life, health, hospitalization or medical reimbursement plans that do not discriminate in favor of executives, and are available generally to all salaried employees.
  - 4. Change in pension value. This is the change in present value of defined benefit and actuarial pension plans.
  - 5. Above-market earnings on deferred compensation which is not tax-qualified.
  - 6. Other compensation, if the aggregate value of all such other compensation (*e.g.* severance, termination payments, value of life insurance paid on behalf of the employee, perquisites or property) for the executive exceeds \$10,000.

## **Term 42. System for Award Management and Universal Identifier Requirements**

### **A. Requirement for Registration in the System for Award Management (SAM)**

Unless the Recipient is exempted from this requirement under 2 CFR 25.110, the Recipient must maintain the currency of its information in SAM until the Recipient submits the final financial report required under this Award or receive the final payment, whichever is later. This requires that the Recipient reviews and updates the information at least annually after the initial registration, and more frequently if required by changes in its information or another award term.

If the Recipient had an active registration in the CCR, it has an active registration in SAM.

**B. Requirement for Data Universal Numbering System (DUNS) Numbers**

If the Recipient is authorized to make subawards under this Award, the Recipient:

- i. Must notify potential subrecipients that no entity (see definition in paragraph C of this award term) may receive a subaward from the Recipient unless the entity has provided its DUNS number to the Recipient.
- ii. May not make a subaward to an entity unless the entity has provided its DUNS number to the Recipient.

**C. Definitions**

For purposes of this award term:

- i. System for Award Management (SAM) means the Federal repository into which an entity must provide information required for the conduct of business as a recipient. Additional information about registration procedures may be found at the SAM Internet site (currently at <https://www.sam.gov>).
- ii. Data Universal Numbering System (DUNS) number means the nine-digit number established and assigned by Dun and Bradstreet, Inc. (D&B) to uniquely identify business entities. A DUNS number may be obtained from D&B by telephone (currently 866-705-5711) or the Internet (currently at <http://fedgov.dnb.com/webform>).
- iii. Entity, as it is used in this award term, means all of the following, as defined at 2 CFR Part 25, subpart C:
  1. A Governmental organization, which is a State, local government, or Indian Tribe;
  2. A foreign public entity;
  3. A domestic or foreign nonprofit organization;
  4. A domestic or foreign for-profit organization; and
  5. A Federal agency, but only as a subrecipient under an award or subaward to a non-Federal entity.
- iv. Subaward:
  1. This term means a legal instrument to provide support for the performance of any portion of the substantive project or program for which the Recipient received this Award and that the Recipient awards to an eligible subrecipient.

2. The term does not include the Recipient's procurement of property and services needed to carry out the project or program (for further explanation, see Sec. \_\_.210 of the attachment to OMB Circular A-133, Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations).
  3. A subaward may be provided through any legal agreement, including an agreement that the Recipient considers a contract.
- v. Subrecipient means an entity that:
1. Receives a subaward from the Recipient under this Award; and
  2. Is accountable to the Recipient for the use of the Federal funds provided by the subaward.

### **Term 43. Nondisclosure and Confidentiality Agreements Assurances**

- A. By entering into this agreement, the Recipient attests that it **does not and will not** require its employees or contractors to sign internal nondisclosure or confidentiality agreements or statements prohibiting or otherwise restricting its employees or contractors from lawfully reporting waste, fraud, or abuse to a designated investigative or law enforcement representative of a Federal department or agency authorized to receive such information.
- B. The Recipient further attests that it **does not and will not** use any Federal funds to implement or enforce any nondisclosure and/or confidentiality policy, form, or agreement it uses unless it contains the following provisions:
  - i. *“These provisions are consistent with and do not supersede, conflict with, or otherwise alter the employee obligations, rights, or liabilities created by existing statute or Executive order relating to (1) classified information, (2) communications to Congress, (3) the reporting to an Inspector General of a violation of any law, rule, or regulation, or mismanagement, a gross waste of funds, an abuse of authority, or a substantial and specific danger to public health or safety, or (4) any other whistleblower protection. The definitions, requirements, obligations, rights, sanctions, and liabilities created by controlling Executive orders and statutory provisions are incorporated into this agreement and are controlling.”*
  - ii. The limitation above shall not contravene requirements applicable to Standard Form 312, Form 4414, or any other form issued by a Federal department or agency governing the nondisclosure of classified information.

- iii. Notwithstanding provision listed in paragraph (a), a nondisclosure or confidentiality policy form or agreement that is to be executed by a person connected with the conduct of an intelligence or intelligence-related activity, other than an employee or officer of the United States Government, may contain provisions appropriate to the particular activity for which such document is to be used. Such form or agreement shall, at a minimum, require that the person will not disclose any classified information received in the course of such activity unless specifically authorized to do so by the United States Government. Such nondisclosure or confidentiality forms shall also make it clear that they do not bar disclosures to Congress, or to an authorized official of an executive agency or the Department of Justice, that are essential to reporting a substantial violation of law.

#### **Term 44. National Security: Classifiable Results Originating Under an Award**

- A. This Award is intended for unclassified, publicly releasable research. The Recipient will not be granted access to classified information. EERE does not expect that the results of the research project will involve classified information. Under certain circumstances, however, a classification review of information originated under the award may be required. DOE may review research work generated under this Award at any time to determine if it requires classification.
- B. Executive Order 12958 (60 Fed. Reg. 19,825 (1995)) states that basic scientific research information not clearly related to the national security shall not be classified. Nevertheless, some information concerning (among other things) scientific, technological, or economic matters relating to national security or cryptology may require classification. If the Recipient originates information during the course of this Award that the Recipient believes requires classification, the Recipient must promptly:
  - i. Notify the DOE Technology Manager/Project Officer and the DOE Award Administrator;
  - ii. Submit the information by registered mail directly to the Director, Office of Classification and Information Control, SO-10.2; U.S. Department of Energy; P.O. Box A; Germantown, MD 20875-0963, for classification review.
  - iii. Restrict access to the information to the maximum extent possible until the Recipient is informed that the information is not classified, but no longer than 30 days after receipt by the Director, Office of Classification and Information Control
- C. If the Recipient originates information concerning the production or utilization of

special nuclear material (*i.e.*, plutonium, uranium enriched in the isotope 233 or 235, and any other material so determined under section 51 of the Atomic Energy Act) or nuclear energy, the Recipient must:

- i. Notify the DOE Technology Manager/Project Officer and the DOE Award Administrator;
  - ii. Submit the information by registered mail directly to the Director, Office of Classification and Information Control, SO-10.2; U.S. Department of Energy; P. O. Box A; Germantown, MD 20875-0963 for classification review within 180 days of the date the Recipient first discovers or first has reason to believe that the information is useful in such production or utilization; and
  - iii. Restrict access to the information to the maximum extent possible until the Recipient is informed that the information is not classified, but no longer than 90 days after receipt by the Director, Office of Classification and Information Control.
- D. If EERE determines any of the information requires classification, the Recipient agrees that the Government may terminate the Award with consent of the Recipient in accordance with 2 CFR 200.339(a)(3). All material deemed to be classified must be forwarded to EERE, in a manner specified by EERE.
- If EERE does not respond within the specified time periods, the Recipient is under no further obligation to restrict access to the information.

#### **Term 45. Subrecipient Change Notification**

Except for subrecipients specifically proposed as part of the Recipient's Application for award, the Recipient must notify the Contracting Officer and Project Manager in writing 30 days prior to the execution of new or modified subrecipient agreements, including naming any To Be Determined subrecipients. This notification does not constitute a waiver of the prior approval requirements outlined in 2 CFR part 200 as amended by 2 CFR part 910, nor does it relieve the Recipient from its obligation to comply with applicable Federal statutes, regulations, and executive orders.

In order to satisfy this notification requirement, the Recipient documentation must, as a minimum, include the following:

- A description of the research to be performed, the service to be provided, or the equipment to be purchased;
- Cost share commitment letter if the subrecipient is providing cost share to the Award;

- An assurance that the process undertaken by the Recipient to solicit the subrecipient complies with their written procurement procedures as outlined in 2 CFR 200.317 through 200.329;
- An assurance that no planned, actual or apparent conflict of interest exists between the Recipient and the selected subrecipient and that the Recipient's written standards of conduct were followed<sup>1</sup>;
- A completed Environmental Questionnaire, if applicable;
- An assurance that the subrecipient is not a debarred or suspended entity; and
- An assurance that all required award provisions will be flowed down in the resulting subrecipient agreement.

The Recipient is responsible for making a final determination to award or modify subrecipient agreements under this agreement, but the Recipient may not proceed with the subrecipient agreement until the Contracting Officer determines, and provides the Recipient written notification, that the information provided is adequate.

Should the Recipient not receive a written notification of adequacy from the Contracting Officer within 30 days of the submission of the subrecipient documentation stipulated above, Recipient may proceed to award or modify the proposed subrecipient agreement.

#### **Term 46. Conference Spending**

The Recipient shall not expend any funds on a conference not directly and programmatically related to the purpose for which the grant or cooperative agreement was awarded that would defray the cost to the United States Government of a conference held by any Executive branch department, agency, board, commission, or office for which the cost to the United States Government would otherwise exceed \$20,000, thereby circumventing the required notification by the head of any such Executive Branch department, agency, board, commission, or office to the Inspector General (or senior ethics official for any entity without an Inspector General), of the date, location, and number of employees attending such conference.

#### **Term 47. Subawards to DOE National Laboratories**

For the purposes of the subaward(s) to a DOE National Laboratory, the Recipient shall use an agreement consistent with the Management and Operating (M&O) Contract of the Laboratory (e.g., Strategic Partnership Projects or CRADA). Such agreements that are approved by the M&O Contracting Officer, in consultation with the DOE Patent Counsel, shall be considered compliant with the flow down requirements of the terms and conditions of this Award.

---

<sup>1</sup> It is DOE's position that the existence of a "covered relationship" as defined in 5 CFR 2635.502(a)&(b) between a member of the Recipient's owners or senior management and a member of a subrecipient's owners or senior management creates at a minimum an apparent conflict of interest that would require the Recipient to notify the Contracting Officer and provide detailed information and justification (including, for example, mitigation measures) as to why the subrecipient agreement does not create an actual conflict of interest. The Recipient must also notify the Contracting Officer of any new subrecipient agreement with: (1) an entity that is owned or otherwise controlled by the Recipient; or (2) an entity that is owned or otherwise controlled by another entity that also owns or otherwise controls the Recipient, as it is DOE's position that these situations also create at a minimum an apparent conflict of interest.



## **Term 48. Recipient Integrity and Performance Matters**

### **A. General Reporting Requirement**

If the total value of your currently active Financial Assistance awards, cooperative agreements, and procurement contracts from all Federal awarding agencies exceeds \$10,000,000 for any period of time during the period of performance of this Federal award, then you as the recipient during that period of time must maintain the currency of information reported to the System for Award Management (SAM) that is made available in the designated integrity and performance system (currently the Federal Awardee Performance and Integrity Information System (FAPIIS)) about civil, criminal, or administrative proceedings described in paragraph 2 of this term. This is a statutory requirement under section 872 of Public Law 110-417, as amended (41 U.S.C. 2313). As required by section 3010 of Public Law 111-212, all information posted in the designated integrity and performance system on or after April 15, 2011, except past performance reviews required for Federal procurement contracts, will be publicly available.

### **B. Proceedings About Which You Must Report**

Submit the information required about each proceeding that:

- i. Is in connection with the award or performance of a Financial Assistance, cooperative agreement, or procurement contract from the Federal Government;
- ii. Reached its final disposition during the most recent five year period; and
- iii. Is one of the following:
  1. A criminal proceeding that resulted in a conviction, as defined in paragraph E of this award term and condition;
  2. A civil proceeding that resulted in a finding of fault and liability and payment of a monetary fine, penalty, reimbursement, restitution, or damages of \$5,000 or more;
  3. An administrative proceeding, as defined in paragraph E of this term, that resulted in a finding of fault and liability and your payment of either a monetary fine or penalty of \$5,000 or more or reimbursement, restitution, or damages in excess of \$100,000; or
  4. Any other criminal, civil, or administrative proceeding if:
    - a. It could have led to an outcome described in paragraph B.iii.1, 2, or 3 of this term;
    - b. It had a different disposition arrived at by consent or compromise with an acknowledgment of fault on your part; and
    - c. The requirement in this term to disclose information about the proceeding does not conflict with applicable laws and regulations.

**C. Reporting Procedures**

Enter in the SAM Entity Management area the information that SAM requires about each proceeding described in paragraph B of this term. You do not need to submit the information a second time under assistance awards that you received if you already provided the information through SAM because you were required to do so under Federal procurement contracts that you were awarded.

**D. Reporting Frequency**

During any period of time when you are subject to the requirement in paragraph A of this term, you must report proceedings information through SAM for the most recent five year period, either to report new information about any proceeding(s) that you have not reported previously or affirm that there is no new information to report. Recipients that have Federal contract, Financial Assistance awards, (including cooperative agreement awards) with a cumulative total value greater than \$10,000,000, must disclose semiannually any information about the criminal, civil, and administrative proceedings.

**E. Definitions**

For purposes of this term:

- i. Administrative proceeding means a non-judicial process that is adjudicatory in nature in order to make a determination of fault or liability (e.g., Securities and Exchange Commission Administrative proceedings, Civilian Board of Contract Appeals proceedings, and Armed Services Board of Contract Appeals proceedings). This includes proceedings at the Federal and State level but only in connection with performance of a Federal contract or Financial Assistance awards. It does not include audits, site visits, corrective plans, or inspection of deliverables.
- ii. Conviction means a judgment or conviction of a criminal offense by any court of competent jurisdiction, whether entered upon a verdict or a plea, and includes a conviction entered upon a plea of *nolo contendere*.
- iii. Total value of currently active Financial Assistance awards, cooperative agreements and procurement contracts includes—
  1. Only the Federal share of the funding under any Federal award with a recipient cost share or match; and
  2. The value of all expected funding increments under a Federal award and options, even if not yet exercised.



## Statement of Project Objectives

[Award Number][Mod Number]  
[Recipient Organization Name]  
[Project Title]

### A. **PROJECT OBJECTIVES**

*Note: This content must be consistent with the ‘Project Objectives’ section of the Work Plan submitted by the Applicant.*

Provide a clear and concise (high-level) statement of the goals and objectives of the project as well as the expected outcomes. If the award is to be structured in Budget Periods, include the objective(s) for each Budget Period.

### B. **TECHNICAL SCOPE SUMMARY**

*Note: This content must be consistent with the ‘Technical Scope Summary’ section of the Work Plan submitted by the Applicant.*

Provide a summary description of the overall work scope and approach to achieve the objective(s). The work scope description needs to be divided by Budget Periods that are separated by discrete, approximately annual decision points (see below for more information on go/no-go decision points). The applicant should describe the specific expected end result of each performance period.

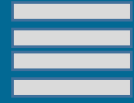
### C. **TASKS TO BE PERFORMED**

*Note: This content must be consistent with the ‘Work Breakdown Structure (WBS) and Task Description Summary’ section of the Work Plan submitted by the Applicant.*

The section should describe the specific activities to be conducted over the life of the project. This section provides a summary of the planned approach to this project and should clearly articulate what work must be accomplished to execute the project scope and thus meet the established project objectives.

The task descriptions should be structured with a hierarchy of performance period separated by at least one project-wide go/no-go decision point at the end of each budget period, approximately every 12 to 18 months of the project. In other words, tasks should be organized in a logical sequence and should be divided into the budget periods of the project, as appropriate.

Each task and subtask is to have a unique number and title and an indication of the approximate duration of the task or subtask in months. Each task and subtask is to have a task summary that describes the objectives, what work is to be accomplished, and relationship to project



deliverables or expected results. Appropriate milestones and go/no-go decision criteria should be incorporated into the task and subtask structure.

**Milestones:** The SOPO should identify appropriate milestones throughout the project to demonstrate success, where success is defined as technical achievement rather than simply completing a task. Milestones should follow the SMART rule of thumb, which is that all milestones should be **Specific, Measurable, Achievable, Relevant, and Timely**. . Unless otherwise specified in the FOA, the minimum requirement is that each project must have at least one milestone per quarter for the duration of the project (depending on the project, more milestones may be necessary to comprehensively demonstrate progress). The Applicant should also provide the means by which the milestone will be verified. In addition to describing milestones in the SOPO text, the milestones should be included in the Milestone Summary Table below.

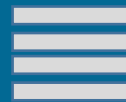
**Go/No-Go Decision Points:** The SOPO should include project-wide go/no-go decision points at the end of each budget period. A go/no-go decision point is a risk management tool and a project management best practice to ensure that, for the current budget period or period of performance, technical success is definitively achieved and potential for success in future budget periods or periods of performance is evaluated, prior to actually beginning the execution of future budget periods. Unless otherwise specified in the FOA, the minimum requirement is that each project must have at least one project-wide go/no-go decision point for each budget period (approximately each 12 to 18 month period) of the project. The SOPO should also include the specific technical criteria that will be used to evaluate the progress and make the go/no-go decision. In addition to describing the go/no-go decision points in the SOPO text, the go/no-go decision points and their method of verification should be included in the Milestone Summary Table below.

*Below is an example of a typical task structure. While the example illustrates two Budget Periods and three tasks, the specific project work scope will dictate the appropriate number of budget periods, tasks and subtasks:*

**BUDGET PERIOD 1 [TITLE]** – *Budget Period designations may not be necessary for all awards, but are required for multi-year projects when subsequent work authorization is dependent on meeting success or acceptance criteria associated with major milestones or go/no-go decision points. Text describing the milestone or go/no-go decision is to be inserted into the task structure at the point where prior completed work is expected to confirm attainment of the milestone or support the criteria established to make the go/no-go decision.*

**Task 1.0:** Distinctive Title, Date range of the task in months (M1-M4)

**Task Summary:** Task summaries shall explicitly describe what work is to be accomplished, identify the project objectives/outcomes being addresses and provide a concise statement of the objectives of that task. In addition, the description should indicate the project deliverables or expected results that this task will help achieve.



**Milestone 1.1** (if applicable)

**Milestone 1.2** (if applicable)

Etc.

**Subtask 1.1:** Title, Date range (M1-M2)

**Subtask Summary:** Describe the specific and detailed work efforts that go into achieving the higher-level tasks.

**Milestone 1.1.1** (if applicable)

**Milestone 1.1.2** (if applicable)

Etc.

**Subtask 1.2:** Title, Date range (M3-M4)  
(Continue until all Task 1 subtasks are listed)

**Task 2.0:** (continue in the format above until all tasks and subtasks are listed)

**Subtask 2.1:** Title, Date range, Subtask Summary Description

**Subtask 2.2:** Title, Date range, Subtask Summary Description

**Budget Period 1 Go/No-Go Decision Point:** Insert go/no-go decision description, including the specific technical criteria or basis on which the decision is to be made.

## **BUDGET PERIOD 2 [TITLE]**

**Task 3.0:** Distinctive Title, Date range of the task in months (M12-M14)  
(Continue in the format above until all tasks and subtasks are listed)

## **D. PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND REPORTING**

This section should briefly describe relevant project management and reporting activities during all budget periods, including any special reporting requirements or deliverables.

Reports and other deliverables will be provided in accordance with the Federal Assistance Reporting Checklist following the instructions included therein.

Additional deliverables as indicated in the task/subtask descriptions include the following:

*[Note: If items other than those identified on the "Federal Assistance Reporting Checklist" will be delivered to DOE, these deliverables will be identified within the text of the Statement of Project Objectives and should be identified here. See the following examples:*

- 1. Subtask 1.1 - (Topical Report or Item (e.g. hardware for testing) Description)*
- 2. Task 2 - (Topical Report or Item (e.g. hardware for testing) Description)*



### Milestone Summary Table

Recipient Name:							
Project Title:							
Task Number	Task or Subtask (if applicable) Title	Milestone Type (Milestone or Go/No Go Decision Point)	Milestone Number* (Go/No Go Decision Point Number)	Milestone Description (Go/No Go Decision Criteria)	Milestone Verification Process (What, How, Who, Where)	Anticipated Date (Months from Start of the Project)	Anticipated Quarter (Quarters from Start of the Project)

*Note: This content must be consistent with the ‘Milestone Summary’ section of the Work Plan submitted by the Applicant.*

*\* Milestone numbering convention should align with Task and Subtask numbers, as appropriate. For example, M1.1, M3.2, etc.*

*Note 1: It is required that each project has at least one milestone per quarter for the entire project duration. It is not necessary that each task have one milestone per quarter.*

*Note 2: It is required that each project has at least one project-wide go/no-go decision point at the end of each budget period, approximately every 12 to 18 months. If a decision point is not specific to a particular task, then you may leave the task information blank for those decision points.*

*Note 3: All milestones should follow the SMART rule of thumb: **S**pecific, **M**easurable, **A**chievable, **R**elevant, and **T**imely*



1. Identification Number:		2. Program/Project Title:	
3. Recipient:			
4. Reporting Requirements (see attached "EERE Reporting Instructions"):	Frequency	Addressees*	
		*See attached "EERE Reporting Instructions" for complete submission instructions	
<b>I. PROJECT MANAGEMENT REPORTING</b>			
<input type="checkbox"/> A. Research Performance Progress Report (RPPR) (RD&D Projects)	Q	A. <a href="https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx">https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx</a>	
<input type="checkbox"/> B. Progress Report (Non-RD&D Projects)	Q	B. <a href="https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx">https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx</a>	
<input type="checkbox"/> C. Financial Report (SF-425)	QF	C. <a href="https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx">https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx</a>	
<input type="checkbox"/> D. Special Status Report	A	D. <a href="https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx">https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx</a>	
<input type="checkbox"/> E. Other (see Special Instructions)	A	E. <a href="https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx">https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx</a>	
<b>II. SCIENTIFIC / TECHNICAL REPORTING</b>			
<input type="checkbox"/> A. Journal Article-Accepted Manuscript	A	A. <a href="http://www.osti.gov/elink-2413">http://www.osti.gov/elink-2413</a>	
<input type="checkbox"/> B. Scientific / Technical Conference Paper / Presentation / Proceeding	A	B. <a href="http://www.osti.gov/elink-2413">http://www.osti.gov/elink-2413</a>	
<input type="checkbox"/> C. Scientific / Technical Software & Manual	A	C. <a href="http://www.osti.gov/estsc/241-4.jsp">http://www.osti.gov/estsc/241-4.jsp</a>	
<input type="checkbox"/> D. Scientific / Technical Dataset	A	D. <a href="https://www.osti.gov/elink/241-6">https://www.osti.gov/elink/241-6</a>	
<input type="checkbox"/> E. Other STI (Dissertation / Thesis, see Special Instructions)	A	E. <a href="http://www.osti.gov/elink-2413">http://www.osti.gov/elink-2413</a>	
<b>III. CLOSEOUT REPORTING</b>			
<input type="checkbox"/> A. Final Scientific / Technical Report	F	A. <a href="http://www.osti.gov/elink-2413">http://www.osti.gov/elink-2413</a>	
<input type="checkbox"/> B. Patent Certification (DOE F 2050.11)	F	B. <a href="https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx">https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx</a>	
<input type="checkbox"/> C. Final Property Report (SF-428 & SF-428B)	F	C. <a href="https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx">https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx</a>	
<input type="checkbox"/> D. Software Deliverable Submission	F	D. <a href="http://www.osti.gov/estsc/241-4.jsp">http://www.osti.gov/estsc/241-4.jsp</a>	
<input type="checkbox"/> E. Other (see Special Instructions)	F	E. <a href="https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx">https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx</a>	
<b>IV. OTHER REPORTING</b>			
<input type="checkbox"/> A. Intellectual Property Reporting Form (EERE 357)	A	A. <a href="https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx">https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx</a>	
<input type="checkbox"/> B. Invention Utilization Report (EERE 356)	Y	B. <a href="https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx">https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx</a>	
<input type="checkbox"/> C. U.S. Manufacturing Report (EERE 358)	Y	C. <a href="https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx">https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx</a>	
<input type="checkbox"/> D. Project Management Plan (PMP)	A	D. <a href="https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx">https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx</a>	
<input type="checkbox"/> E. Annual Incurred Cost Proposal	Y180	E. <a href="https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx">https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx</a>	
<input type="checkbox"/> F. Annual Audit of For-Profit Recipients	A	F. <b>See section IV. F. for instructions and due dates</b> <a href="https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx">https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx</a> & send to CFO at : <a href="mailto:DOE-Audit-Submission@hq.doe.gov">DOE-Audit-Submission@hq.doe.gov</a>	
<input type="checkbox"/> G. Annual Property Inventory (SF-428)	Y	G. <a href="https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx">https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx</a>	
<input type="checkbox"/> H. Reporting Addendum (EERE 359)	YF	H. <a href="https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx">https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx</a>	
<input type="checkbox"/> I. Other (see Special Instructions)	A	I. <a href="https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx">https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx</a>	

**FREQUENCY CODES AND DUE DATES:**

**A** – Within five (5) calendar days after the event, or as specified.

**F** – Final; within 90 calendar days after expiration or termination of the award.

**Y** – Yearly; within 90 calendar days after the end of the annual reporting period.

**S** – Semiannually; within 30 days after end of the reporting period.

**Q** – Quarterly; within 30 calendar days after the end of the quarterly reporting period.

**Y180** – Yearly; within 180 calendar days after the close of the recipient’s fiscal year.

**O** – Other: See instructions for further details.

5. EERE Special Instructions:



## EERE Reporting Instructions

**\*\*\*** *Throughout award negotiations and the performance of the project, it is important that you mark confidential information and documents as described in Appendix A. It is equally important that you not submit Protected Personally Identifiable Information (Protected PII) to EERE. See Appendix A for guidance on Protected PII.* **\*\*\***

### **I. PROJECT MANAGEMENT REPORTING**

#### **A. Research Performance Progress Report (RPPR) (RD&D Projects)**

Submit to: <https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx>  
Submission deadline: Within 30 calendar days after the end of the quarterly reporting period (January 30, April 30, July 30, October 30)

Every quarter, the Prime Recipient is required to submit a Research Performance Progress Report for the project – i.e., the entirety of work performed by the Prime Recipient, Subrecipients, and contractors – to EERE. The Research Performance Progress Report must include the following information.

**Title Page:** The title page should identify, in chart form, the Federal Agency to which the report is submitted; the FOA name and number; the nature of the report (i.e., Research Performance Progress Report); the award number; the award type (e.g., grant, CRADA); the name, title, email address, and phone number for the Prime Recipient; the Prime Recipient type (National Lab, University, Private Company, Non-Profit, or Government); the project title; the Principal Investigator(s); the Prime Recipient's DUNS number; the date of the report; and the period covered by the report, including the quarter and year (e.g., Q1: Jan. 1 – Mar. 31, 2010).

**Section I.** Accomplishments & Milestone Update: A comparison of the actual accomplishments with the technical milestones and deliverables for the period. Explain why the technical milestones and deliverables were not met, if they were not. Describe the pre-commercialization status (e.g., cost, efficiency, durability) of technologies developed or being developed through EERE-sponsored efforts. Discuss what was accomplished during this reporting period, including major activities, significant results, major findings or conclusions, key outcomes, or other achievements. Clearly denote the recipient's unique and distinguished contribution to the project. This section should contain

sufficient information to allow the EERE director to verify the achievement of the technical milestones and deliverables.

Section II. Issues, Risks, and Mitigation: Actual or anticipated problems or delays and actions taken or planned to resolve them.

Section III. Changes in Approach: Any changes in approach or aims and reasons for change. Any changes to the technical milestones and deliverables must be approved in advance by the EERE Contracting Officer.

Section IV. Key Personnel: Any changes in key personnel or teaming arrangements. Such changes must be approved in advance by the EERE Contracting Officer.

Section V. Project Output:

A. Publications: Any project-related articles, papers, or presentations that are authored or prepared by the Project Team and published or distributed (at a conference or otherwise). List author name; title; publication or conference; volume, issue, and pages (if applicable); and year of publication. *The Prime Recipient is required to send a copy of each publication to the program support designated by the EERE Program Director.* Scientific/technical conference papers/proceedings must also be reported in accordance with Section II.B of “EERE Reporting Instructions.”

B. Technologies/Techniques: Any new technologies or techniques developed under the Award. Briefly describe the new technologies or techniques (specific capabilities and performance improvements enabled by EERE-sponsored efforts), the pre-commercialization history of the technologies and their potential application to current and future projects.

C. Status Reports: Progress reports and updates submitted to EERE during this quarter. List name of report and date of submission to EERE.

D. Media Reports: Any media articles (e.g., newspapers, magazines, online media). List author, title, publication or website, page number (if applicable), and date of publication. *The Prime Recipient is required to send a copy of any media report that discusses project results to the program support staff designated by the EERE Program Director.*

- E. Invention Disclosures: Subject inventions disclosed to EERE and the U.S. Department of Energy (DOE) under this Award. List title, date submitted, and name of inventor.
- F. Patent Applications: Domestic and foreign patent applications arising out of subject inventions disclosed to EERE and the DOE under this Award. List patent number, name of inventors, assignee, patent application number, date of filing, and title of patent application.
- G. Licensed Technologies: Subject inventions licensed to third parties. List name of licensee, domestic or foreign patent or patent application number, title, and expiration date of agreement.
- H. Networks/Collaborations Fostered: Partnerships and other arrangements concluded with respect to the project or technology area. List name of network/collaboration (if any), name of entities involved, date of agreement (if any), brief description of network/collaboration, and technology area. Clearly denote the partner organizations' unique and distinguished contribution to the project.
- I. Websites Featuring Project Work or Results: Web site or other Internet sites that reflect the work or results of this project. List name of website, specific webpage(s) on which project work or results featured, and brief description of project work or results featured.
- J. Other Products: Additional project output, such as data or databases, physical collections, audio or video, software or netware, models, educational aid or curricula, instruments or equipment. Provide a brief description of additional project output, date of release, and entity to which output was provided.
- K. Awards, Prizes, and Recognition: Any awards, prizes, or other recognition for project work or results, subject inventions, patents or patent applications, etc. List name of award/recognition/prize, name of sponsoring organization, date of receipt, and subject of award/prize/recognition.

Section VI. Follow-On Funding: The Prime Recipient is required to disclose any received or anticipated commitment or obligations of funding that is being received or may be received by the Prime Recipient, Subrecipient, Principal Investigator(s) (including Co-Principal

Investigators), or Key Participants to support the EERE funded project or work that relates directly or indirectly to the EERE funded project. List source of funding, amount of funding, the beginning and end dates of funding, and point of contact (name, title, employer, telephone number, and e-mail address), regarding the current or anticipated funding. Include any pending application for funding to governmental or other entities.

- Section VII. Recipient and Principal Investigator Disclosures: The Prime Recipient is required to disclose if any of the following conditions exist:
- A. The Prime Recipient, Subrecipient, or Principal Investor(s) (including Co-Principal Investigators) is under investigation for or has been convicted of fraud or similar acts, violations of U.S. export control laws and regulations, or violations of the Drug-Free Workplace Act of 1988 (Pub. L. 100-690, Title V, Subtitle D; 41 U.S.C. 701, et seq.);
  - B. The Prime Recipient, Subrecipient, or Principal Investigator(s) (including Co-Principal Investigators) is debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, or otherwise declared ineligible from receiving Federal contracts, subcontracts, and financial assistance and benefits; and
  - C. The Prime Recipient, Subrecipient, or Principal Investigator(s) (including Co-Principal Investigators) is insolvent.
- Section VIII. Conflicts of Interests Within Project Team: The Prime Recipient is required to disclose any actual or apparent personal, organizational, financial, and other conflicts of interest within the Project Team. Examples of potential conflicts of interest may include, but are not limited to: the Principal Investigator for the Prime recipient may have an equity stake in a Subrecipient; the Principal Investigator for a Subrecipient may have a consulting arrangement with the Prime Recipient; or a Subrecipient may be a subsidiary or otherwise affiliated with the Prime Recipient.
- Section IX. Performance of Work in the United States: All work performed under EERE Awards must be performed in the United States. The Prime Recipient is required to disclose if any work under the Award is being performed outside the US. The Prime Recipient may perform certain work outside the U.S. if it receives an authorization in advance by the EERE Contracting Officer (e.g., by approval of a Foreign Work Waiver Request).

- Section X. Project Schedule Status: The Prime Recipient is required to report on the status of the technical milestones and deliverables identified in their award. List milestones and deliverables, anticipated start and completion dates, and actual start and completion dates. The Prime Recipient must estimate the percentage complete for each milestone/deliverable.
- Section XI.A Budget Status - Prime Recipient: Show approved budget (EERE share vs. the Prime Recipient's cost share), actual costs incurred during the quarter (EERE share vs. the Prime Recipient's cost share), cumulative cost to date (EERE share vs. the Prime Recipient's cost share), and remaining balance. In addition, show Technology Transfer & Outreach (TT&O) costs on a separate worksheet.
- Section XI.B Budget Status – FFRDC/GOGO: Show approved budget (EERE share vs. FFRDC/GOGO cost share, if any), actual costs incurred during the quarter (EERE share vs. FFRDC/GOGO cost share, if any), cumulative cost to date (EERE share vs. FFRDC/GOGO cost share, if any), and remaining balance. In addition, show TT&O costs on a separate worksheet.
- Section XII. Certification of Compliance: The Prime Recipient is required to certify that the information provided in the Research Performance Progress Report is accurate and complete as of the date shown.

## **B. Progress Report (Non-RD&D Projects)**

Submit to: <https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx>  
Submission Within 30 calendar days after the end of the quarterly reporting period (January  
deadline: 30, April 30, July 30, October 30)

The Recipient must provide a concise narrative assessment of the status of work and include the following information and any other information identified under Special Instructions on the Federal Assistance Reporting Checklist:

1. The DOE award and report information:
  - a. The DOE Award Number (as it appears on the award face page)
  - b. Recipient Name (as it appears on the award face page)
  - c. Project Title
  - d. Project Director / Principal Investigator (PD/PI) Name, Title and Contact Information  
(e-mail address and phone number)
  - e. Name of Submitting Official, Title, and Contact Information (e-mail address and phone number), if other than PD/PI

- 
- f. Project Period (Start Date, End Date)
    - g. Report Submission Date
    - h. Reporting Period Start and End Date
  2. A written comparison of the actual project accomplishments with the project goals and objectives established for the reporting period; if goals and/or objectives for the reporting period were not met, a detailed description of the variance shall be provided.
  3. A discussion of what was accomplished under these goals and objectives established for this reporting period, including major activities, significant results, major findings or conclusions, key outcomes, or other achievements. This section should not contain any proprietary data or other information not subject to public release. If such information is important to reporting progress, do not include the information, but include a note in the report advising the reader to contact the Principal Investigator or the Project Director for further information.
  4. **Cost Status.** A comparison of the approved budget by budget period and the actual costs incurred during the reporting period shall be provided. If cost sharing is required, the cost breakdown shall show the DOE share, recipient share, and total costs.
  5. **Schedule Status.** List milestones, anticipated completion dates and actual completion dates. If you submitted a project management plan with your application, you must use this plan to report schedule and budget variances. You may use your own project management system to provide this information.
  6. Describe any changes during the reporting period in project approach and the reasons for these changes. Remember, significant changes to the project objectives and scope require prior approval by the Contracting Officer.
  7. Describe any actual or anticipated problems or delays and any actions taken or planned to resolve them.
  8. Describe any absence or changes of key personnel or changes in consortium/teaming arrangement during the reporting period.
  9. List and describe any product produced or technology transfer activities accomplished during this reporting period, such as:
    - A. Publications (list journal name, volume, issue); conference papers; or other public releases of results. Attach or send copies of public releases to the DOE Program Manager identified in Block 15 of the Assistance Agreement Cover Page.
-

- B. Web site or other Internet sites (list the URL) that reflect the results of this project.
- C. Networks or collaborations fostered.
- D. Technologies/Techniques (Identify and Describe).
- E. Inventions/Patent Applications (Identify and Describe with date of application)
- F. Other products, such as data or databases, physical collections, audio or video, software or NetWare, models, educational aid or curricula, instruments or equipment (Identify and Describe).

### **C. Financial Report SF-425 Federal Financial Report**

Submit to: <https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx>  
Submission deadline: Within 30 calendar days after the end of the quarterly reporting period (January 30, April 30, July 30, October 30) **and** within 90 calendar days after expiration or termination of the award

Every quarter, the Prime Recipient is required to submit a completed SF-425 for the project – i.e., the entirety of work performed by the Prime Recipient, Subrecipients, and contractors – to EERE. A fillable version of the SF-425 is available at [http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/grants/grants\\_forms.aspx](http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/grants/grants_forms.aspx).

### **D. Special Status Reports**

Submit to: <https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx>  
Submission deadline: Within five (5) calendar days after the event, or as specified

The Prime Recipient is required to report the following events to EERE:

1. Any notices or claims of patent or copyright infringement arising out of or relating to the performance of the EERE Award;
2. Refusal of a Subrecipient to accept flowdown requirements in the Special Terms and Conditions and/or any Attachment to the EERE Award;
3. Potential or actual violations of federal, state, and municipal laws arising out of or relating to work under the Award;
4. Any improper claims or excess payments arising out of or relating to work under the Award;

5. Potential or actual violations of the cost share requirements under the Award;
6. Potential or actual noncompliance with EERE or DOE reporting requirements under the Award;
7. Potential or actual violations of the lobbying restrictions in the Award;
8. Potential or actual bankruptcy/insolvency of the Prime Recipient or Subrecipient;
9. Potential or actual violation of U.S. export control laws and regulations arising out of or relating to the work under the Award;
10. Any fatality or injuries requiring hospitalization arising out of or relating to work under the Award;
11. Potential or actual violations of environmental, health, or safety laws and regulations;
12. Any event which is anticipated to cause a significant schedule slippage or cost increase;
13. Any damage to Government-owned equipment in excess of \$25,000;
14. Any incident arising out of or relating to work under the Award that has the potential for high visibility in the media.

**E. Other (see Special Instructions)**

Submit to: <https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx>  
Submission deadline: Within five (5) calendar days after the event, or as specified

**II. SCIENTIFIC / TECHNICAL REPORTING**

The dissemination of scientific and technical information (STI) ensures public access to the results of federally funded research. STI refers to information products in any medium or format used to convey results, findings, or technical innovations from research and development or other scientific and technological work that are prepared with the intention of being preserved and disseminated in the broadest sense applicable (i.e., to the public or, in the case of controlled unclassified information or classified information, disseminated among authorized individuals). Access to and archival of DOE-funded STI are managed by the DOE Office of Scientific and Technical Information (OSTI). For information about OSTI see <http://www.osti.gov>.



For more information on STI submittals, see <http://www.osti.gov/stip/submittal>.

By properly notifying DOE OSTI about the published results, the information will be made publicly accessible and discoverable through DOE web-based products.

**NOTE: SCIENTIFIC/TECHNICAL PRODUCTS INTENDED FOR PUBLIC RELEASE MUST NOT CONTAIN PROTECTED PERSONALLY IDENTIFIABLE INFORMATION (PII).** PII is defined as any information about an individual which can be used to distinguish or trace an individual's identity. Some information that is considered to be PII is available in *public* sources such as telephone books, public websites, university listings, etc. This type of information is considered to be Public PII and includes, for example, first and last name, address, work telephone number, e-mail address, home telephone number, and general educational credentials. In contrast, *Protected* PII is defined as an individual's first name or first initial and last name in combination with any one or more of the following types of information: social security number, passport number, credit card numbers, clearances, bank numbers, biometrics, date and place of birth, mother's maiden name, criminal, medical and financial records, educational transcripts, etc., which could be misused if made publicly available.

### **Other STI**

Recipients are encouraged to announce other forms of STI especially if they are the primary means by which certain research results are disseminated or if they contain research results not already announced to DOE by the Recipient in technical reports, accepted journal articles, or other STI. This Reporting Requirement will be denoted with the Frequency "O – Other" on the Checklist.

Other types of STI produced which may be for used for public dissemination of project results include: dissertation/thesis, patent, book, or other similar products. These types of STI may also be announced using DOE AN 241.3 by following instructions on the E-Link website (<http://www.osti.gov/elink-2413>).

### **A. Journal Article-Accepted Manuscript**

Submit to: DOE Energy Link System (E-Link) available at <http://www.osti.gov/elink-2413>  
Submission: Within five (5) calendar days after the event, or as specified  
deadline:

Access to scholarly publications is enabled by providing the Journal Article-Accepted Manuscript to DOE OSTI and is consistent with the U.S. Government's retained license to published results of federally funded research. If the Recipient has a journal article accepted for publication, then the Recipient must submit an AN 241.3, as described below, at the time the article meets the status of being "accepted" for publication.

Content. The Recipient is to provide the final peer-reviewed accepted manuscript, i.e., the version of a journal article that has been peer reviewed and accepted for publication in a journal. Do NOT submit the journal's published version of the article, i.e., do NOT submit a copyrighted reprint.

Electronic Submission Process. The Journal Article-Accepted Manuscript must be provided electronically via the DOE Energy Link System (E-Link) and must be accompanied by a completed DOE Announcement Notice (AN) 241.3 (<http://www.osti.gov/mlink-2413>).

Within the AN 241.3, provide relevant journal information (article title, journal name, volume, issue, and any other pertinent publication information) as well as the URL (unless uploading the full document).

Within the 241.3, the Recipients should provide a persistent link to the repository location of the accepted manuscript. An example of a persistent link is a URL to the specific location of the Journal Article-Accepted Manuscript hosted on a public, openly accessible university research publications website. If a persistent link is not available or if the website has access restrictions (preventing public access), then the Recipient should upload the full-text of the Accepted Manuscript using the AN 241.3 and E-Link instructions.

Full-text of accepted manuscripts must be in the ADOBE PORTABLE DOCUMENT FORMAT (PDF) and be one integrated PDF file that contains all text, tables, diagrams, photographs, schematic, graphs, and charts.

## **B. Scientific / Technical Conference Papers / Presentation /Proceeding**

Submit to: DOE Energy Link System (E-Link) available at <http://www.osti.gov/mlink-2413>  
Submission deadline: Within five (5) calendar days after the event, or as specified

The Prime Recipient must submit a copy of any scientific/technical conference papers/proceedings, with the following information: (1) name of conference; (2) location of conference; (3) date of conference; and (4) conference sponsor. Scientific/technical conference papers/proceedings must be submitted in the Adobe PDF format as one integrated PDF file containing all text, tables, diagrams, photographs, schematic, graphs, and charts. In addition, scientific/technical conference papers/proceedings must be accompanied by a completed DOE Form 241.3. The form and instructions are available on DOE Energy Link System (E-Link) at <http://www.osti.gov/mlink-2413>.

## **C. Scientific / Technical Software & Manual**

Submit to: DOE Energy Link System (E-Link) available at <http://www.osti.gov/estsc/241-4.jsp>  
Submission deadline: Within five (5) calendar days after the event, or as specified

Content. Unless otherwise specified in the award, the following must be delivered: source code, the executable object code and the minimum support documentation needed by a competent user to understand and use the software and to be able to modify the software in subsequent development efforts.

Submission Process. The software submission must be accompanied by a completed DOE Announcement Notice (AN) 241.4 “Announcement of U.S. Department of Energy Computer Software.” The form and instructions are available on E-Link at <http://www.osti.gov/estsc/241-4.jsp>. The AN 241.4 may be filled online and submitted electronically with a printed copy or note accompanying the shipped software package.

Software (including user guide or manual) must be submitted on computer disk (CD) shipped via regular mail to:

Energy Science and Technology Software Center  
P.O. Box 1020  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831

#### **D. Scientific / Technical Datasets**

Submit to: DOE Energy Link System (E-Link) available at <https://www.osti.gov/elink/241-6>  
Submission deadline: Within five (5) calendar days after the event, or as specified

Scientific/technical datasets (datastreams, data files, etc.) support the technical reports and published literature resulting from DOE-funded research. They are also recognized as valuable information entities in their own right that, now and in the future, need to be available for citation, discovery, retrieval, and reuse. The assignment and registration of a Digital Object Identifier (DOI) is a free service for DOE-funded researchers which is provided by OSTI to enhance access to this important resource. In order to obtain a DOI, provide to OSTI the specific data elements relevant to the dataset, as specified in DOE AN 241.6.

Content. If the recipient generates publicly available datasets resulting from work funded by DOE, they may announce these datasets to OSTI and have them registered with DataCite to obtain a DOI, which ensures long-term linkage between the DOI and the dataset’s location. To register and publicly announce a dataset, the Recipient must provide an AN 241.6, including the required data elements needed for describing the dataset.

Electronic Submission Process. Notification of scientific datasets must be submitted electronically via the DOE Energy Link System (E-Link) and must be accompanied by a completed DOE Announcement Notice (AN) 241.6 (<https://www.osti.gov/elink/241-6>).

Within the AN 241.6, provide relevant information about the dataset as well as the URL where the dataset can be accessed.

### **E. Other (Dissertation / Thesis, see Special Instructions)**

Submit to: <http://www.osti.gov/elink-2413>  
Submission deadline: Within five (5) calendar days after the event, or as specified

Other types of scientific and technical information produced which may be for used for public dissemination of project results include: dissertation/thesis, patent, book, or other similar products. These types of STI may also be announced using DOE AN 241.3 by following instructions on the E-Link website (<http://www.osti.gov/elink-2413>).

NOTE: ALL SCIENTIFIC/TECHNICAL PRODUCTS INTENDED FOR PUBLIC RELEASE SHOULD NOT CONTAIN PROTECTED PII. Personally Identifiable Information (PII) is defined as any information about an individual which can be used to distinguish or trace an individual's identity. Some information that is considered to be PII is available in public sources such as telephone books, public websites, university listings, etc. This type of information is considered to be Public PII and includes, for example, first and last name, address, work telephone number, e-mail address, home telephone number, and general educational credentials. In contrast, Protected PII is defined as an individual's first name or first initial and last name in combination with any one or more of the following types of information: social security number, passport number, credit card numbers, clearances, bank numbers, biometrics, date and place of birth, mother's maiden name, criminal, medical and financial records, educational transcripts, etc., which could be mis-used if made publicly available.

## **III. CLOSEOUT REPORTING**

### **A. Final Scientific/Technical Report**

Submit to: DOE Energy Link System (E-Link) available at <http://www.osti.gov/elink-2413>  
Submission deadline: Within 90 calendar days after expiration or termination of the award

The Prime Recipient must submit a Final Scientific/Technical Report to DOE. The Report must be submitted in Adobe PDF Format as one integrated PDF file that contains all text, tables, diagrams, photographs, schematic, graphs, and charts. The Report must be accompanied by a completed electronic version of DOE Form 241.3, "U.S. Department of Energy (DOE), Announcement of Scientific and Technical Information (STI)," available via DOE Energy Link System (E-Link) at <http://www.osti.gov/elink-2413>. The Report must contain the following information:

1. Identify the EERE award number; name of recipient; project title; name of project director/principal investigator; and consortium/teaming members.
2. Provide an executive summary, which includes a discussion of (1) how the research adds to the understanding of the area investigated; (2) the technical effectiveness and economic feasibility of the methods or techniques investigated or demonstrated; or (3) how the project is otherwise of benefit to the public. The discussion should be a minimum of one paragraph and written in terms understandable by an educated layman.
3. Provide a comparison of the actual accomplishments with the goals and objectives of the project.
4. STI that is publicly accessible need not be duplicated in the report if a citation with a link to where the information may be found is included in the report. For example, articles found in PAGES (i.e., DOE's Public Access Gateway for Energy and Science, <http://www.osti.gov/pages/>) are accessible to the public.
5. Summarize project activities for the entire period of funding, including original hypotheses, approaches used, problems encountered and departure from planned methodology, and an assessment of their impact on the project results. Include, if applicable, facts, figures, analyses, and assumptions used during the life of the project to support the conclusions.
6. Identify products developed under the Award and technology transfer activities, such as:
  - a. Publications (list journal name, volume, issue), conference papers, or other public releases of results. If not provided previously, attach or send copies of any public releases to the DOE Program Manager identified in Block 15 of the Assistance Agreement Cover Page;
  - b. Web site or other Internet sites that reflect the results of this project;
  - c. Networks or collaborations fostered;
  - d. Technologies/Techniques;
  - e. Inventions/Patent Applications, licensing agreements; and
  - f. Other products, such as data or databases, physical collections, audio or video, software or netware, models, educational aid or curricula, instruments or equipment.
7. For projects involving computer modeling, provide the following information with the final report:

- a. Model description, key assumptions, version, source and intended use;
- b. Performance criteria for the model related to the intended use;
- c. Test results to demonstrate the model performance criteria were met (e.g., code verification/validation, sensitivity analyses, history matching with lab or field data, as appropriate);
- d. Theory behind the model, expressed in non-mathematical terms;
- e. Mathematics to be used, including formulas and calculation methods;
- f. Whether or not the theory and mathematical algorithms were peer reviewed, and, if so, include a summary of theoretical strengths and weaknesses;
- g. Hardware requirements; and
- h. Documentation (e.g. user guides, model code).

## **B. Patent Certification**

Submit to: <https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx>

Submission deadline: Within 90 calendar days after expiration or termination of the award

The Prime Recipient is required to submit a DOE Form 2050.11, "Patent Certification," available at <http://energy.gov/management/downloads/cformsdoe-f-205011cdr>.

For Large Businesses, the Final Invention and Patent Report must include a list of all subcontracts at any tier containing a patent rights clause (or state that there were none).

## **C. Final Property Report SF-428 & 428B**

Submit to: <https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx>

Submission deadline: Within 90 calendar days after expiration or termination of the award

The Prime Recipient must submit a final inventory of Government-furnished property, and property acquired with project funds, whether the property is in the possession of the Prime Recipient or Subrecipients. The Prime Recipient must submit a completed SF-428B, available at [http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/grants\\_forms](http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/grants_forms). The inventory must include a description of the property, tag number, acquisition date, and acquisition cost,

if purchased with project funds. The location of property should be listed under the Comments section. Any property with a fair market value below \$5,000 may be omitted from the inventory.

The Prime Recipient may submit a disposition plan or request by submitting a completed SF-428C, available at [http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/grants\\_forms](http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/grants_forms), to <https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx>

The EERE Contracting Officer has sole and exclusive authority to approve disposition plans and requests.

#### **D. Software Deliverable Submission**

Submit to: DOE Energy Link System (E-Link) available at <http://www.osti.gov/estsc/241-4.jsp>. Alternatively, submit by regular mail to [Energy Science and Technology Software Center, P.O. Box 1020, Oak Ridge, TN 37831.](#)

Submission deadline: Within 90 calendar days after expiration or termination of the award

The Prime Recipient must submit all software deliverables created under this Award, as well as any accompanying documentation or manuals. The following must be delivered: source code, the executable object code and the minimum support documentation needed by a competent user to understand and use the software and to be able to modify the software in subsequent development efforts.

Each software deliverable and its manual must be accompanied by a completed DOE Form 241.4 "Announcement of U.S. Department of Energy Computer Software," available at <http://www.osti.gov/estsc/241-4.jsp>.

#### **E. Other (see Special Instructions)**

Submit to: <https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx>

Submission deadline: Within 90 calendar days after expiration or termination of the award

### **IV. OTHER REPORTING**

#### **A. Intellectual Property Reporting Form (EERE 357)**

Submit to: <https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx>

Submission deadline: Within five (5) calendar days after the event, or as specified

The Recipient and subrecipient(s), if any, must complete the Intellectual Property Report when:

- (1) Disclosing a subject invention, including anticipated uses and sales;
- (2) Reporting publications, manuscript submissions, or other public disclosures concerning a subject invention;
- (3) Electing (or declining) to retain title to a subject invention;
- (4) Disclosing the filing or termination of patent applications on a subject invention (*i.e.*, patent applications disclosing or claiming a subject invention). Patent disclosures must be made for filing the following patent applications:
  - An initial domestic patent application;
  - A domestic divisional or continuation patent application;
  - A domestic continuation-in-part application; and
  - A foreign patent application.
- (5) Discontinuing prosecution of a patent application, maintenance of a patent, or defense in a patent reexamination or opposition proceeding, regardless of jurisdiction;
- (6) Requesting an extension of time to:
  - Elect (or decline) to retain title to a subject invention; and
  - File an initial domestic or foreign patent application.

Failure to submit Intellectual Property Reporting Forms in a timely manner may result in forfeiture of the recipient's or subrecipient's rights in the subject inventions.

## **B. Invention Utilization Report (EERE 356)**

Submit to: <https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx>

Submission deadline: Within 90 calendar days after the end of the annual reporting period (Reports are due one year after the disclosure date of each subject invention and must continue to be provided for 10 years after the date of disclosure)

The recipient and subrecipient(s), if any, must provide Invention Utilization Reports for any subject inventions made under the award. Reports are due one year after the disclosure date of each subject invention and must continue to be provided for 10 years after the date of disclosure. Failure to submit Invention Utilization Reports in a timely manner may result in forfeiture of the recipient's or subrecipient's rights in the subject inventions.

## **C. U.S. Manufacturing Report (EERE 358)**



Submit to: <https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx>

Submission deadline: Within 90 calendar days after the end of the annual reporting period (Reports are due annually for 5 years after the end date of the funding agreement)

Organizations (e.g., recipients and contractors, at all tiers) that submit a U.S. Manufacturing Plan as part of their application for funding from the Office of Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy (EERE), U.S. Department of Energy and are asserting any intellectual property protection over any part of the results from their funding agreements are required to submit annual reports on compliance with the Plan for 5 years from the end date of the funding agreement.

For the purpose of this report, intellectual property protection includes marking data as Protected Data, as defined in 2 CFR 910.362 Appendix A, or asserting copyright protection on any works developed under the funding agreement, other than scientific and technical articles or in software that will be licensed as open source. If you are submitting Invention Utilization Reports, the U.S. Manufacturing Report is not required.

#### **D. Project Management Plan (PMP)**

Submit to: <https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx>

Submission deadline: Within six (6) weeks of the effective date of the EERE Award

##### Iterations and Maintenance

The recipient is required to develop, update, and adhere to a project management plan. The purpose of the plan is to establish cost, schedule, and technical performance baselines, and to formalize the processes by which the project will be managed. These processes include considerations such as risk management, change management, and communications management. While it is primarily the project recipient's responsibility to maintain the plan, Federal staff may request changes. The plan is intended to be a living document, modified as necessary, and comprising the following iterations:

##### Application Draft

The recipient must submit a draft of the project management plan with the initial application for financial assistance.

##### Negotiation Draft

The selected recipient may be called upon by the selecting Office to revise its project management plan during the negotiation phase.

##### Active Plan

Following formal award of the financial assistance agreement, the recipient must submit an updated project management plan, to include any changes requested during negotiation and a timeline based upon the actual award date.

##### a. Revised Plan(s)

During the life of the project the recipient must submit a revised project management plan based on the following circumstances:

1. Developments that have a significant favorable impact on the project.
2. Problems, delays, or adverse conditions which materially impair the recipient's ability to meet the objectives of the award or which may require the program office to respond to questions relating to such events from the public. Specifically, the recipient must update the plan when any of the following incidents occur:
  - a) Any event which is anticipated to cause significant schedule or cost changes, such as changes to the funding and costing profile or changes to the project timeline.
  - b) Any change to Technology Readiness Level.
  - c) Any significant change to risk events (including both potential and realized events) or to risk management strategies
  - d) Failure to meet a milestone or milestones; any dependencies should be adjusted.
  - e) Any changes to partnerships.
  - f) Any significant change to facilities or other project resources.
  - g) Any other incident that has the potential for high visibility in the media.

b. Content of revised PMP:

Project Title: The DOE award number and project title

Recipient Organization: Official name of the recipient organization

Principal Investigator: The name and title of the project director/  
principal investigator

Date of Plan: The date the plan or plan revision was completed

The revised PMP must describe changes to any of the following sections of the PMP as well as provide updated versions of any logs, tables, charts, or timelines.

1. Executive Summary: Provide a description of the project that includes the objective, project goals, and expected results. The description should include a high level description of the technology, potential use or benefit of the technology, location of work sites and a brief discussion of work performed at each site, along with a description of project phases (if the project includes phases).

2. Technology Readiness Levels (TRLs): Identify the readiness level of the technology associated with the project as well as the planned progression during the course of project execution. A detailed explanation of the rationale for the estimated technology readiness level should be provided. Specific entry criteria for the next higher technology readiness level should be identified. The following definitions apply:
  - a) TRL-1. Basic principles observed and reported: Scientific problem or phenomenon identified. Essential characteristics and behaviors of systems and architectures are identified using mathematical formulations or algorithms. The observation of basic scientific principles or phenomena has been validated through peer-reviewed research. Technology is ready to transition from scientific research to applied research.
  - b) TRL-2. Technology concept and/or application formulated: Applied research activity. Theory and scientific principles are focused on specific application areas to define the concept. Characteristics of the application are described. Analytical tools are developed for simulation or analysis of the application.
  - c) TRL-3. Analytical and experimental critical function and/or characteristic proof of concept: Proof of concept validation has been achieved at this level. Experimental research and development is initiated with analytical and laboratory studies. System/integrated process requirements for the overall system application are well known. Demonstration of technical feasibility using immature prototype implementations are exercised with representative interface inputs to include electrical, mechanical, or controlling elements to validate predictions.
  - d) TRL-4. Component and/or process validation in laboratory environment- Alpha prototype (component) Standalone prototyping implementation and testing in laboratory environment demonstrates the concept. Integration and testing of component technology elements are sufficient to validate feasibility.
  - e) TRL-5. Component and/or process validation in relevant environment- Beta prototype (component): Thorough prototype testing of the component/process in relevant environment to the end user is performed. Basic technology elements are integrated with reasonably realistic supporting elements based on available technologies. Prototyping implementations conform to the target environment and interfaces.

- f) TRL-6. System/process model or prototype demonstration in a relevant environment- Beta prototype (system): Prototyping implementations are partially integrated with existing systems. Engineering feasibility fully demonstrated in actual or high fidelity system applications in an environment relevant to the end user.
  - g) TRL-7. System/process prototype demonstration in an operational environment- Integrated pilot (system): System prototyping demonstration in operational environment. System is at or near full scale (pilot or engineering scale) of the operational system, with most functions available for demonstration and test. The system, component, or process is integrated with collateral and ancillary systems in a near production quality prototype.
  - h) TRL-8. Actual system/process completed and qualified through test and demonstration- Pre-commercial demonstration: End of system development. Full-scale system is fully integrated into operational environment with fully operational hardware and software systems. All functionality is tested in simulated and operational scenarios with demonstrated achievement of end-user specifications. Technology is ready to move from development to commercialization.
3. Risk Management: Provide a summary description of the proposed approach to identify, analyze, and respond to potential risks associated with the proposed project. Project risk events are uncertain future events that, if realized, impact the success of the project. At a minimum, include the initial identification of significant technical, resource, and management issues that have the potential to impede project progress and strategies to minimize impacts from those issues. The risk management approach should be tailored to the TRL. If a project or task is expected to progress to a higher TRL, then the risk plan should address the retirement of any risks associated with the first TRL and identify new risks related to moving to the next TRL. Additionally, the risk management approach should include risk opportunities that if realized, could benefit the project.
4. Milestone Log: Provide milestones for each budget period (or phase) of the project. Each milestone should include a title and planned completion date. Milestones should be quantitative (e.g., a date, a decision to be made, a key event) and show progress toward budget period and/or project goals. Milestones should also be important and few. Higher TRL projects (Demonstration and Deployment) typically have the most detailed milestone logs compared to lower TRL level projects (Research and Development). If applicable, milestones

chosen should clearly reflect progress through various TRL stages.

Note: The Milestone Status must present actual performance in comparison with the Milestone Log, and include:

- (a) The actual status and progress of the project,
- (b) Specific progress made toward achieving the project's milestones, and,
- (c) Any proposed changes in the project's schedule required to complete milestones.

5. **Funding and Costing Profile:** Provide a table (the Project Funding Profile) that shows, by budget period, the amount of government funding going to each project team member. Also a table (the Project Costing Profile) which projects, by month, the expenditure of both government and recipient funds for the first budget period, at a minimum. The Funding and Costing Profile should show the relationships with the Milestone Log (Item 4 above) and Project Timeline (Item 6 below); for example, Funding and Costing information could be shown as an overlay on milestone or timeline charts.
6. **Project Timeline:** Provide a timeline of the project (similar to a Gantt chart) broken down by each task and subtask, as described in the Statement of Project Objectives. The timeline should include a start date and end date for each task, as well as interim milestones. The timeline should also show interdependencies between tasks and include the milestones that are identified in the Milestone Log (Item 4 above). The timeline should also show the relationship to the Project Costing Profile (Item 5 above). If applicable, the timeline should include activities and milestones related to achieving succeeding TRLs.
7. **Success Criteria at Decision Points:** Provide well-defined success criteria for each decision point in the project, including go/no-go decision points and the conclusions of budget periods and the entire project. The success criteria should be objective and stated in terms of specific, measurable, and repeatable data. Usually, the success criteria pertain to desirable outcomes, results, and observations from the project. Key milestones can be associated with success criteria. If applicable, the success criteria should include exit criteria for progressing from one TRL to the next.
8. **Key Partnerships, Teaming Arrangements and Team Members:** Provide a list of key team members in the project as well as the role

and contact information of each. A hierarchical project organization and structure chart should be provided along with a description of the role and responsibilities of each team member in terms of contribution to project scope. The section should also include key team members who fulfill single or multiple roles within a project as well as the contact information for each.

9. Facilities and Resources: Provide a list of project locations along with a discussion of capabilities and activities performed at each site in terms of contribution to project scope. The address of each work site should be provided.
10. Communications Management: Describe the communications needs and expectations for the project team members. The communications plan may be simple or detailed, depending on the complexity of the project. At a minimum, the plan should include contact information, methods of communicating and anticipated frequency.
11. Change Management: Provide a description of the process for managing change on the project. Describe how change will be monitored, controlled and documented within the project. This includes, but is not limited to, changes to the Scope, Schedule, and Budget. If applicable, Change Management should include assessing how changes impact TRLs.

#### **E. Annual Incurred Cost Proposals**

Submit to: If EERE is the Cognizant Federal Agency, send the Annual Incurred Cost Proposal to <https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx> & send to: [CostPrice@ee.doe.gov](mailto:CostPrice@ee.doe.gov)  
Otherwise, submit the proposal to the Cognizant Federal Agency

Submission deadline: Within 180 calendar days after the close of the recipient's fiscal year

The Prime Recipient and Subrecipient must submit an Annual Incurred Cost Proposal, reconciled to its financial statements unless the award is based on a predetermined or fixed indirect rate(s) or a fixed amount for indirect or facilities and administration (F&A) costs. The Prime Recipient must submit its annual incurred cost proposal directly to the Cognizant Federal Agency for negotiating and approving indirect costs.

#### **F. Annual Audits of For-Profit Recipients**

Submit to: <https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx>  
& send to: [CostPrice@ee.doe.gov](mailto:CostPrice@ee.doe.gov)  
& send to CFO at: [DOE-Audit-Submission@hq.doe.gov](mailto:DOE-Audit-Submission@hq.doe.gov)

Submission deadline: Within the earlier of 30 days after receipt of the auditor’s report(s) or 9 months after the end of the audit period (Recipient’s fiscal year-end)

As required by 2 CFR parts 910.500 through 910.521, a For-Profit entity which expends \$750,000 or more during their fiscal year in DOE awards must have a compliance audit conducted for that year.

The compliance audit report(s) must be submitted to DOE within the earlier of thirty days after receipt of the auditor’s report(s) or nine months after the end of the audit period (Recipient’s fiscal year-end). The compliance audit report must be submitted, along with audited financial statements (if applicable), to the appropriate DOE Contracting Officer, Cost-Price Analyst, and the DOE Office of the Chief Financial Officer (CFO).

### G. Annual Property Inventories

Submit to: <https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx>  
Submission deadline: Within 90 calendar days after the end of the annual reporting period

The Prime Recipient must submit an annual inventory of Government-furnished property and property acquired with project funding **where the award specifies that the property vests in the Federal Government (i.e., Federally owned property)**, whether held by the Prime Recipient or Subrecipients. The Prime Recipient must complete SF-428A, available at [http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/grants\\_forms](http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/grants_forms). The inventory must include a description of the property, tag number, acquisition date, and acquisition cost, if purchased with project funds. The location of property should be listed under the Comments section. Any property with a fair market value of \$5,000 or less may be omitted from the inventory.

### H. Reporting Addendum (EERE 359)

Submit to: <https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx>  
Submission deadline: Within 90 calendar days after the end of the annual reporting period **and** within 90 calendar days after expiration or termination of the award

### I. Other (see Special Instructions)

Submit to: <https://www.eere-pmc.energy.gov/SubmitReports.aspx>  
Submission deadline: Within five (5) calendar days after the event, or as specified

## APPENDIX A

# NOTICE TO RECIPIENTS (PRIME RECIPIENTS AND SUBRECIPIENTS) REGARDING CONFIDENTIAL INFORMATION AND DATA AND PROTECTED PERSONALLY IDENTIFIABLE INFORMATION

### I. CONFIDENTIAL INFORMATION AND DATA

The Recipient is required to mark confidential information and data in accordance with this guidance. Failure to properly mark confidential information and data may result in its public disclosure under the Freedom of Information Act (FOIA, 5 U.S.C. § 552) or otherwise.

#### A. Protected Data

The Recipient must properly mark any documents containing Protected Data. “Protected Data” is defined as information and data produced under the award that, if developed at private expense, would qualify as trade secret, privileged, or confidential information or data. Protected Data is protected from public disclosure for five (5) years from the time it is first produced.

- The cover page must be marked with the following wording and identify the specific pages containing Protected Data:

*PROTECTED RIGHTS NOTICE*

*Pages [\_\_\_] of this document contain protected data that was produced under Agreement No. \_\_\_ with the U.S. Department of Energy. This data may not be published, disseminated, or disclosed to others outside the Government until 5 years after development of information under this Agreement, unless express written authorization is obtained from the recipient. Upon expiration of the period of protection set forth in this Notice, the Government shall have unlimited rights in this data.*

- The header and footer of each page containing protected information must be marked with the following wording: “May contain protected information that is privileged or confidential and exempt from public disclosure.”
- Ensure that all e-mails containing protected information are categorized as “confidential.” (Learn how to mark a message confidential in



Outlook: <https://support.office.com/en-nz/article/Mark-an-email-message-as-important-private-or-sensitive-f480dcea-59a9-48da-b7ed-3b3e0ab27a62>).

## B. Other Confidential Information and Data

The Recipient must properly mark any documents containing trade secrets or commercial/financial information that is privileged or confidential.

- The cover page must be marked with the following wording and identify the specific pages containing such information:

*NOTICE OF RESTRICTION ON DISCLOSURE AND USE OF DATA*

*Pages [\_\_] of this document may contain trade secrets or commercial or financial information that is privileged or confidential and exempt from public disclosure. Such information shall be used or disclosed only for evaluation purposes or in accordance with a financial assistance or loan agreement between the submitter and the Government. The Government may use or disclose any information that is not appropriately marked or otherwise restricted, regardless of source.*

- The header and footer of each page containing such information must be marked with the following wording: “*May contain trade secrets or commercial or financial information that is privileged or confidential and exempt from public disclosure.*”
- Each line and paragraph containing such information must be marked with double brackets or other clear identification, such as highlighting.
- Ensure that all e-mails containing protected information are categorized as “confidential.” (Learn how to mark a message confidential in Outlook: <https://support.office.com/en-nz/article/Mark-an-email-message-as-important-private-or-sensitive-f480dcea-59a9-48da-b7ed-3b3e0ab27a62>).

## II. PROTECTED PERSONALLY IDENTIFIABLE INFORMATION

The Recipient should not include any Protected Personally Identifiable Information (Protected PII) in their submissions to EERE. Protected PII is defined as any data that, if compromised, could cause harm to an individual such as identify theft. Protected PII includes:

- Social Security Numbers in any form;
- Place of Birth associated with an individual;
- Date of Birth associated with an individual;
- Mother’s maiden name associated with an individual;
- Biometric record associated with an individual;
- Fingerprint;
- Iris Scan;
- DNA;

- Medical history information associated with an individual;
- Medical conditions, including history of disease;
- Metric information, e.g., weight, height, blood pressure;
- Criminal history associated with an individual;
- Ratings;
- Disciplinary actions;
- Financial information associated with an individual;
- Credit card numbers; and
- Security clearance history or related information (not including actual clearances held).



Applicant Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Award Number: DE-EE000XXXX.XXXX

Attachment 3

**Budget Information - Non Construction Programs**

OMB Approval No. 0348-0044

**Section A - Budget Summary**

Grant Program Function or Activity (a)	Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance Number (b)	Estimated Unobligated Funds		New or Revised Budget		
		Federal (c)	Non-Federal (d)	Federal (e)	Non-Federal (f)	Total (g)
1. Budget Period 1	81.XXX			\$0	\$0	\$0
2. Budget Period 2	81.XXX			\$0	\$0	\$0
3. Budget Period 3	81.XXX			\$0	\$0	\$0
4.						
5. Totals				\$0	\$0	\$0

**Section B - Budget Categories**

6. Object Class Categories	Grant Program, Function or Activity			Total (5)
	Budget Period 1	Budget Period 2	Budget Period 3	
a. Personnel	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0
b. Fringe Benefits	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0
c. Travel	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0
d. Equipment	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0
e. Supplies	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0
f. Contractual	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0
g. Construction	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0
h. Other	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0
i. Total Direct Charges (sum of 6a-6h)	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0
j. Indirect Charges	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0
k. Totals (sum of 6i-6j)	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0
7. Program Income	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0



## Intellectual Property Provisions

Consult the table below and click on the set of Intellectual Property Provisions most applicable to your organization:

Type of Recipient	Type of Award	Type of Project	Special Data Statute (e.g., EPACT)	Class Waiver	Determination of Exceptional Circumstances (DEC)	IP Provisions
Small Business	Cooperative Agreement	Research, Development, or Demonstration (RD&D)	No	N/A	No	EERE 360.6 (CSB-115)
Small Business	Cooperative Agreement	RD&D	No	N/A	Yes	EERE 360.14 (CSB-115) (EERE DEC)
Small Business	Cooperative Agreement	RD&D	Yes	N/A	No	EERE 360.3 (CDSB-115)
Small Business	Cooperative Agreement	RD&D	Yes	N/A	Yes	EERE 360.13 (CDSB-115) (EERE DEC)
Large Business, State or Local Government, or Foreign Entity	Cooperative Agreement	RD&D	No	No	N/A	EERE 360.4 (CLB-115)
Large Business, State or Local Government, or Foreign Entity	Cooperative Agreement	RD&D	No	Yes	N/A	EERE 360.5 (CLB-115) (Class Patent Waiver)
Large Business, State or Local Government, or Foreign Entity	Cooperative Agreement	RD&D	Yes	No	N/A	EERE 360.1 (CDLB-115)
Large Business, State or Local Government, or Foreign Entity	Cooperative Agreement	RD&D	Yes	Yes	N/A	EERE 360.2 (CDLB-115) (Class Patent Waiver)
Nonprofit Organization and Domestic Educational Organization	Cooperative Agreement	RD&D	Yes	N/A	No	EERE 360.3 (CDSB-115)
Nonprofit Organization and Domestic Educational Organization	Cooperative Agreement	RD&D	Yes	N/A	Yes	EERE 360.13 (CDSB-115) (EERE DEC)



Type of Recipient	Type of Award	Type of Project	Special Data Statute (e.g., EPACT)	Class Waiver	Determination of Exceptional Circumstances (DEC)	IP Provisions
Nonprofit Organization and Domestic Educational Organization	Cooperative Agreement	RD&D	No	N/A	Yes	EERE 360.14 (CSB-115) (EERE DEC)
Nonprofit Organization and Domestic Educational Organization	Grant or Cooperative Agreement	RD&D	No	N/A	No	EERE 360.11 (GNP-115)
All Entities	Grant or Cooperative Agreement	Non RD&D	N/A	No	No	EERE 360.7 (NRD-115)

Please note that for an actual award, the IP provisions may be added, removed and/or modified as required.



## Cooperative Agreement Research, Development, or Demonstration Domestic Small Business

01. [FAR 52.227-1](#) Authorization and Consent (DEC 2007)  
Alternate I (APR 1984)
02. [FAR 52.227-2](#) Notice and Assistance Regarding Patent and Copyright  
Infringement (DEC 2007)
03. [2 CFR 910](#) Rights in Data – General  
Appendix A of Subpart D
04. [2 CFR 910](#) Patent Rights (Small Business Firms and Nonprofit  
Appendix A of Subpart D Organizations)

NOTE: In reading these provisions, any reference to “contractor” shall mean “recipient,” and any reference to “contract” or “subcontract” shall mean “award” or “subaward.”

## **01. FAR 52.227-1 Authorization and Consent (DEC 2007) Alternate I (APR 1984)**

(a) The Government authorizes and consents to all use and manufacture of any invention described in and covered by a United States patent in the performance of this contract or any subcontract at any tier.

(b) The Contractor shall include the substance of this clause, including this paragraph (b), in all subcontracts that are expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold. However, omission of this clause from any subcontract, including those at or below the simplified acquisition threshold, does not affect this authorization and consent.

(End of clause)

## **02. FAR 52.227-2 Notice and Assistance Regarding Patent and Copyright Infringement (DEC 2007)**

(a) The Contractor shall report to the Contracting Officer, promptly and in reasonable written detail, each notice or claim of patent or copyright infringement based on the performance of this contract of which the Contractor has knowledge.

(b) In the event of any claim or suit against the Government on account of any alleged patent or copyright infringement arising out of the performance of this contract or out of the use of any supplies furnished or work or services performed under this contract, the Contractor shall furnish to the Government, when requested by the Contracting Officer, all evidence and information in the Contractor's possession pertaining to such claim or suit. Such evidence and information shall be furnished at the expense of the Government except where the Contractor has agreed to indemnify the Government.

(c) The Contractor shall include the substance of this clause, including this paragraph (c), in all subcontracts that are expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold.

(End of clause)

## **03. 2 CFR Part 910, Appendix A of Subpart D, Rights in Data - General**

(a) Definitions

*Computer Data Bases*, as used in this clause, means a collection of data in a form capable of, and for the purpose of, being stored in, processed, and operated on by a computer. The term does not include computer software.

*Computer software*, as used in this clause, means (i) computer programs which are data comprising a series of instructions, rules, routines or statements, regardless of the media in

which recorded, that allow or cause a computer to perform a specific operation or series of operations and (ii) data comprising source code listings, design details, algorithms, processes, flow charts, formulae, and related material that would enable the computer program to be produced, created or compiled. The term does not include computer data bases.

*Data*, as used in this clause, means recorded information, regardless of form or the media on which it may be recorded. The term includes technical data and computer software. The term does not include information incidental to administration, such as financial, administrative, cost or pricing, or management information.

*Form, fit, and function data*, as used in this clause, means data relating to items, components, or processes that are sufficient to enable physical and functional interchangeability, as well as data identifying source, size, configuration, mating, and attachment characteristics, functional characteristics, and performance requirements; except that for computer software it means data identifying source, functional characteristics, and performance requirements but specifically excludes the source code, algorithm, process, formulae, and flow charts of the software.

*Limited rights*, as used in this clause, means the rights of the Government in limited rights data as set forth in the Limited Rights Notice of subparagraph (g)(2) if included in this clause.

*Limited rights data*, as used in this clause, means data (other than computer software) developed at private expense that embody trade secrets or are commercial or financial and confidential or privileged.

*Restricted computer software*, as used in this clause, means computer software developed at private expense and that is a trade secret; is commercial or financial and is confidential or privileged; or is published copyrighted computer software; including minor modifications of such computer software.

*Restricted rights*, as used in this clause, means the rights of the Government in restricted computer software, as set forth in a Restricted Rights Notice of subparagraph (g)(3) if included in this clause, or as otherwise may be provided in a collateral agreement incorporated in and made part of this contract, including minor modifications of such computer software.

*Technical data*, as used in this clause, means data (other than computer software) which are of a scientific or technical nature. Technical data does not include computer software, but does include manuals and instructional materials and technical data formatted as a computer data base.

*Unlimited rights*, as used in this clause, means the right of the Government to use, disclose, reproduce, prepare derivative works, distribute copies to the public, and perform publicly and display publicly, in any manner and for any purpose, and to have or permit others to do so.



(b) Allocations of Rights

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this clause regarding copyright, the Government shall have unlimited rights in—

(i) Data first produced in the performance of this agreement;

(ii) Form, fit, and function data delivered under this agreement;

(iii) Data delivered under this agreement (except for restricted computer software) that constitute manuals or instructional and training material for installation, operation, or routine maintenance and repair of items, components, or processes delivered or furnished for use under this agreement; and

(iv) All other data delivered under this agreement unless provided otherwise for limited rights data or restricted computer software in accordance with paragraph (g) of this clause.

(2) The Recipient shall have the right to—

(i) Use, release to others, reproduce, distribute, or publish any data first produced or specifically used by the Recipient in the performance of this agreement, unless provided otherwise in paragraph (d) of this clause;

(ii) Protect from unauthorized disclosure and use those data which are limited rights data or restricted computer software to the extent provided in paragraph (g) of this clause;

(iii) Substantiate use of, add or correct limited rights, restricted rights, or copyright notices and to take over appropriate action, in accordance with paragraphs (e) and (f) of this clause; and

(iv) Establish claim to copyright subsisting in data first produced in the performance of this agreement to the extent provided in paragraph (c)(1) of this clause.

(c) Copyright

(1) Data first produced in the performance of this agreement. Unless provided otherwise in paragraph (d) of this clause, the Recipient may establish, without prior approval of the Contracting Officer, claim to copyright subsisting in data first produced in the performance of this agreement. When claim to copyright is made, the Recipient shall affix the applicable copyright notices of 17 U.S.C. 401 or 402 and acknowledgement of Government sponsorship (including agreement number) to the data when such data are delivered to the Government, as well as when the data are published or deposited for registration as a published work in the U.S. Copyright Office. For such copyrighted data, including computer software, the Recipient grants to the Government, and others acting on its behalf, a paid-up nonexclusive, irrevocable

worldwide license in such copyrighted data to reproduce, prepare derivative works, distribute copies to the public, and perform publicly and display publicly, by or on behalf of the Government.

(2) Data not first produced in the performance of this agreement. The Recipient shall not, without prior written permission of the Contracting Officer, incorporate in data delivered under this agreement any data not first produced in the performance of this agreement and which contains the copyright notice of 17 U.S.C. 401 or 402, unless the Recipient identifies such data and grants to the Government, or acquires on its behalf, a license of the same scope as set forth in paragraph (c)(1) of this clause; provided, however, that if such data are computer software the Government shall acquire a copyright license as set forth in paragraph (g)(3) of this clause if included in this agreement or as otherwise may be provided in a collateral agreement incorporated in or made part of this agreement.

(3) Removal of copyright notices. The Government agrees not to remove any copyright notices placed on data pursuant to this paragraph (c), and to include such notices on all reproductions of the data.

(d) Release, Publication and Use of Data

(1) The Recipient shall have the right to use, release to others, reproduce, distribute, or publish any data first produced or specifically used by the Recipient in the performance of this agreement, except to the extent such data may be subject to the Federal export control or national security laws or regulations, or unless otherwise provided in this paragraph of this clause or expressly set forth in this agreement.

(2) The Recipient agrees that to the extent it receives or is given access to data necessary for the performance of this award, which contain restrictive markings, the Recipient shall treat the data in accordance with such markings unless otherwise specifically authorized in writing by the contracting officer.

(e) Unauthorized Marking of Data

(1) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this agreement concerning inspection or acceptance, if any data delivered under this agreement are marked with the notices specified in paragraph (g)(2) or (g)(3) of this clause and use of such is not authorized by this clause, or if such data bears any other restrictive or limiting markings not authorized by this agreement, the Contracting Officer may at any time either return the data to the Recipient or cancel or ignore the markings. However, the following procedures shall apply prior to canceling or ignoring the markings.

(i) The Contracting Officer shall make written inquiry to the Recipient affording the Recipient 30 days from receipt of the inquiry to provide written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings;

(ii) If the Recipient fails to respond or fails to provide written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings within the 30-day period (or a longer time not exceeding 90 days approved in writing by the Contracting Officer for good cause shown), the Government shall have the right to cancel or ignore the markings at any time after said period and the data will no longer be made subject to any disclosure prohibitions.

(iii) If the Recipient provides written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings within the period set in paragraph (e)(1)(i) of this clause, the Contracting Officer shall consider such written justification and determine whether or not the markings are to be cancelled or ignored. If the Contracting Officer determines that the markings are authorized, the Recipient shall be so notified in writing. If the Contracting Officer determines, with concurrence of the head of the contracting activity, that the markings are not authorized, the Contracting Officer shall furnish the Recipient a written determination, which determination shall become the final agency decision regarding the appropriateness of the markings unless the Recipient files suit in a court of competent jurisdiction within 90 days of receipt of the Contracting Officer's decision. The Government shall continue to abide by the markings under this paragraph (e)(1)(iii) until final resolution of the matter either by the Contracting Officer's determination becoming final (in which instance the Government shall thereafter have the right to cancel or ignore the markings at any time and the data will no longer be made subject to any disclosure prohibitions), or by final disposition of the matter by court decision if suit is filed.

(2) The time limits in the procedures set forth in paragraph (e)(1) of this clause may be modified in accordance with agency regulations implementing the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) if necessary to respond to a request thereunder.

(f) Omitted or Incorrect Markings

(1) Data delivered to the Government without either the limited rights or restricted rights notice as authorized by paragraph (g) of this clause, or the copyright notice required by paragraph (c) of this clause, shall be deemed to have been furnished with unlimited rights, and the Government assumes no liability for the disclosure, use, or reproduction of such data. However, to the extent the data has not been disclosed without restriction outside the Government, the Recipient may request, within 6 months (or a longer time approved by the Contracting Officer for good cause shown) after delivery or such data, permission to have notices placed on qualifying data at the Recipient's expense, and the Contracting Officer may agree to do so if the Recipient:

- (i) Identifies the data to which the omitted notice is to be applied;
- (ii) Demonstrates that the omission of the notice was inadvertent;
- (iii) Establishes that the use of the proposed notice is authorized; and

(iv) Acknowledges that the Government has no liability with respect to the disclosure, use, or reproduction of any such data made prior to the addition of the notice or resulting from the omission of the notice.

(2) The Contracting Officer may also:

(i) Permit correction at the Recipient's expense of incorrect notices if the Recipient identifies the data on which correction of the notice is to be made, and demonstrates that the correct notice is authorized, or

(ii) Correct any incorrect notices.

(g) Protection of Limited Rights Data and Restricted Computer Software

When data other than that listed in paragraphs (b)(1)(i), (ii), and (iii) of this clause are specified to be delivered under this agreement and qualify as either limited rights data or restricted computer software, if the Recipient desires to continue protection of such data, the Recipient shall withhold such data and not furnish them to the Government under this agreement. As a condition to this withholding, the Recipient shall identify the data being withheld and furnish form, fit, and function data in lieu thereof. Limited rights data that are formatted as a computer data base for delivery to the Government are to be treated as limited rights data and not restricted computer software.

(h) Subaward/Contract

The Recipient has the responsibility to obtain from its subrecipients/contractors all data and rights therein necessary to fulfill the Recipient's obligations to the Government under this agreement. If a subrecipient/contractor refuses to accept terms affording the Government such rights, the Recipient shall promptly bring such refusal to the attention of the Contracting Officer and not proceed with the subaward/contract award without further authorization.

(i) Additional Data Requirements

In addition to the data specified elsewhere in this agreement to be delivered, the Contracting Officer may, at any time during agreement performance or within a period of 3 years after acceptance of all items to be delivered under this agreement, order any data first produced or specifically used in the performance of this agreement. This clause is applicable to all data ordered under this subparagraph. Nothing contained in this subparagraph shall require the Recipient to deliver any data the withholding of which is authorized by this clause, or data which are specifically identified in this agreement as not subject to this clause. When data are to be delivered under this subparagraph, the Recipient will be compensated for converting the data into the prescribed form, for reproduction, and for delivery.

(j) The recipient agrees, except as may be otherwise specified in this award for specific data items listed as not subject to this paragraph, that the Contracting Officer or an authorized representative may, up to three years after acceptance of all items to be delivered under this award, inspect at the Recipient's facility any data withheld pursuant to paragraph (g) of this clause, for purposes of verifying the Recipient's assertion pertaining to the limited rights or restricted rights status of the data or for evaluating work performance. Where the Recipient whose data are to be inspected demonstrates to the Contracting Officer that there would be a possible conflict of interest if the inspection were made by a particular representative, the Contracting Officer shall designate an alternate inspector.

(End of clause)

#### **04. 2 CFR 910, Appendix A of Subpart D, Patent Rights (Small Business Firms and Nonprofit Organizations)**

##### (a) Definitions

*Invention* means any invention or discovery which is or may be patentable or otherwise protectable under title 35 of the United States Code, or any novel variety of plant which is or may be protected under the Plant Variety Protection Act (7 U.S.C. 2321 *et seq.*).

*Made* when used in relation to any invention means the conception or first actual reduction to practice of such invention.

*Nonprofit organization* is defined in 2 CFR 200.70.

*Practical application* means to manufacture in the case of a composition or product, to practice in the case of a process or method, or to operate in the case of a machine or system; and, in each case, under such conditions as to establish that the invention is being utilized and that its benefits are to the extent permitted by law or Government regulations available to the public on reasonable terms.

*Small business firm* means a small business concern as defined at section 2 of Public Law 85-536 (16 U.S.C. 632) and implementing regulations of the Administrator of the Small Business Administration. For the purpose of this clause, the size standards for small business concerns involved in Government procurement and subcontracting at 13 CFR 121.3 through 121.8 and 13 CFR 121.3 through 121.12, respectively, will be used.

*Subject invention* means any invention of the Recipient conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the performance of work under this award, provided that in the case of a variety of plant, the date of determination (as defined in section 41(d) of the Plant Variety Protection Act, 7 U.S.C. 2401(d) must also occur during the period of award performance.

##### (b) Allocation of Principal Rights

The Recipient may retain the entire right, title, and interest throughout the world to each subject invention subject to the provisions of this Patent Rights clause and 35 U.S.C. 203. With respect to any subject invention in which the Recipient retains title, the Federal Government shall have a non-exclusive, nontransferable, irrevocable, paid-up license to practice or have practiced for or on behalf of the U.S. the subject invention throughout the world.

(c) Invention Disclosure, Election of Title and Filing of Patent Applications by Recipient

(1) The Recipient will disclose each subject invention to DOE within two months after the inventor discloses it in writing to Recipient personnel responsible for the administration of patent matters. The disclosure to DOE shall be in the form of a written report and shall identify the award under which the invention was made and the inventor(s). It shall be sufficiently complete in technical detail to convey a clear understanding to the extent known at the time of disclosure, of the nature, purpose, operation, and the physical, chemical, biological or electrical characteristics of the invention. The disclosure shall also identify any publication, on sale or public use of the invention and whether a manuscript describing the invention has been submitted for publication and, if so, whether it has been accepted for publication at the time of disclosure. In addition, after disclosure to DOE, the Recipient will promptly notify DOE of the acceptance of any manuscript describing the invention for publication or of any on sale or public use planned by the Recipient.

(2) The Recipient will elect in writing whether or not to retain title to any such invention by notifying DOE within two years of disclosure to DOE. However, in any case where publication, on sale, or public use has initiated the one-year statutory period wherein valid patent protection can still be obtained in the U.S., the period for election of title may be shortened by the agency to a date that is no more than 60 days prior to the end of the statutory period.

(3) The Recipient will file its initial patent application on an invention to which it elects to retain title within one year after election of title or, if earlier, prior to the end of any statutory period wherein valid patent protection can be obtained in the U.S. after a publication, on sale, or public use. The Recipient will file patent applications in additional countries or international patent offices within either ten months of the corresponding initial patent application, or six months from the date when permission is granted by the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks to file foreign patent applications when such filing has been prohibited by a Secrecy Order.

(4) Requests for extension of the time for disclosure to DOE, election, and filing under subparagraphs (c)(1), (2), and (3) of this clause may, at the discretion of DOE, be granted.

(d) Conditions When the Government May Obtain Title

The Recipient will convey to DOE, upon written request, title to any subject invention:

(1) If the Recipient fails to disclose or elect the subject invention within the times specified in paragraph (c) of this patent rights clause, or elects not to retain title; provided that DOE may only request title within 60 days after learning of the failure of the Recipient to disclose or elect within the specified times;

(2) In those countries in which the Recipient fails to file patent applications within the times specified in paragraph (c) of this Patent Rights clause; provided, however, that if the Recipient has filed a patent application in a country after the times specified in paragraph (c) of this Patent Rights clause, but prior to its receipt of the written request of DOE, the Recipient shall continue to retain title in that country; or

(3) In any country in which the Recipient decides not to continue the prosecution of any application for, to pay the maintenance fees on, or defend in a reexamination or opposition proceeding on, a patent on a subject invention.

(e) Minimum Rights to Recipient and Protection of the Recipient Right To File

(1) The Recipient will retain a non-exclusive royalty-free license throughout the world in each subject invention to which the Government obtains title, except if the Recipient fails to disclose the subject invention within the times specified in paragraph (c) of this Patent Rights clause. The Recipient's license extends to its domestic subsidiaries and affiliates, if any, within the corporate structure of which the Recipient is a party and includes the right to grant sublicenses of the same scope of the extent the Recipient was legally obligated to do so at the time the award was awarded. The license is transferable only with the approval of DOE except when transferred to the successor of that part of the Recipient's business to which the invention pertains.

(2) The Recipient's domestic license may be revoked or modified by DOE to the extent necessary to achieve expeditious practical application of the subject invention pursuant to an application for an exclusive license submitted in accordance with applicable provisions at 37 CFR part 404 and the agency's licensing regulation, if any. This license will not be revoked in that field of use or the geographical areas in which the Recipient has achieved practical application and continues to make the benefits of the invention reasonably accessible to the public. The license in any foreign country may be revoked or modified at discretion of the funding Federal agency to the extent the Recipient, its licensees, or its domestic subsidiaries or affiliates have failed to achieve practical application in that foreign country.

(3) Before revocation or modification of the license, the funding Federal agency will furnish the Recipient a written notice of its intention to revoke or modify the license, and the Recipient will be allowed thirty days (or such other time as may be authorized by DOE for good cause shown by the Recipient) after the notice to show cause why the license should not be revoked or modified. The Recipient has the right to appeal, in accordance with applicable regulations in 37 CFR part 404 and the agency's licensing regulations, if any, concerning the licensing of

Government-owned inventions, any decision concerning the revocation or modification of its license.

(f) Recipient Action To Protect Government's Interest

(1) The Recipient agrees to execute or to have executed and promptly deliver to DOE all instruments necessary to:

(i) Establish or confirm the rights the Government has throughout the world in those subject inventions for which the Recipient retains title; and

(ii) Convey title to DOE when requested under paragraph (d) of this Patent Rights clause, and to enable the government to obtain patent protection throughout the world in that subject invention.

(2) The Recipient agrees to require, by written agreement, its employees, other than clerical and non-technical employees, to disclose promptly in writing to personnel identified as responsible for the administration of patent matters and in a format suggested by the Recipient each subject invention made under this award in order that the Recipient can comply with the disclosure provisions of paragraph (c) of this Patent Rights clause, and to execute all papers necessary to file patent applications on subject inventions and to establish the Government's rights in the subject inventions. The disclosure format should require, as a minimum, the information requested by paragraph (c)(1) of this Patent Rights clause. The Recipient shall instruct such employees through the employee agreements or other suitable educational programs on the importance of reporting inventions in sufficient time to permit the filing of patent applications prior to U.S. or foreign statutory bars.

(3) The Recipient will notify DOE of any decision not to continue prosecution of a patent application, pay maintenance fees, or defend in a reexamination or opposition proceeding on a patent, in any country, not less than 30 days before the expiration of the response period required by the relevant patent office.

(4) The Recipient agrees to include, within the specification of any U.S. patent application and any patent issuing thereon covering a subject invention, the following statement: "This invention was made with Government support under (identify the award) awarded by (identify DOE). The Government has certain rights in this invention."

(g) Subaward/Contract

(1) The Recipient will include this Patent Rights clause, suitably modified to identify the parties, in all subawards/contracts, regardless of tier, for experimental, developmental or research work to be performed by a small business firm or nonprofit organization. The subrecipient/contractor will retain all rights provided for the Recipient in this Patent Rights



clause, and the Recipient will not, as part of the consideration for awarding the subcontract, obtain rights in the subcontractors' subject inventions.

(2) The Recipient will include in all other subawards/contracts, regardless of tier, for experimental, developmental or research work, the patent rights clause required by 2 CFR 910.362(c).

(3) In the case of subawards/contracts at any tier, DOE, the Recipient, and the subrecipient/contractor agree that the mutual obligations of the parties created by this clause constitute a contract between the subrecipient/contractor and DOE with respect to those matters covered by the clause.

#### (h) Reporting on Utilization of Subject Inventions

The Recipient agrees to submit on request periodic reports no more frequently than annually on the utilization of a subject invention or on efforts at obtaining such utilization that are being made by the Recipient or its licensees or assignees. Such reports shall include information regarding the status of development, date of first commercial sale or use, gross royalties received by the Recipient and such other data and information as DOE may reasonably specify. The Recipient also agrees to provide additional reports in connection with any march-in proceeding undertaken by DOE in accordance with paragraph (j) of this Patent Rights clause. As required by 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(5), DOE agrees it will not disclose such information to persons outside the Government without the permission of the Recipient.

#### (i) Preference for United States Industry.

Notwithstanding any other provision of this Patent Rights clause, the Recipient agrees that neither it nor any assignee will grant to any person the exclusive right to use or sell any subject invention in the U.S. unless such person agrees that any products embodying the subject invention or produced through the use of the subject invention will be manufactured substantially in the U.S. However, in individual cases, the requirement for such an agreement may be waived by DOE upon a showing by the Recipient or its assignee that reasonable but unsuccessful efforts have been made to grant licenses on similar terms to potential licensees that would be likely to manufacture substantially in the U.S. or that under the circumstances domestic manufacture is not commercially feasible.

#### (j) March-in-Rights

The Recipient agrees that with respect to any subject invention in which it has acquired title, DOE has the right in accordance with procedures at 37 CFR 401.6 and any supplemental regulations of the Agency to require the Recipient, an assignee or exclusive licensee of a subject invention to grant a non-exclusive, partially exclusive, or exclusive license in any field of use to a responsible applicant or applicants, upon terms that are reasonable under the circumstances

and if the Recipient, assignee, or exclusive licensee refuses such a request, DOE has the right to grant such a license itself if DOE determines that:

(1) Such action is necessary because the Recipient or assignee has not taken or is not expected to take within a reasonable time, effective steps to achieve practical application of the subject invention in such field of use;

(2) Such action is necessary to alleviate health or safety needs which are not reasonably satisfied by the Recipient, assignee, or their licensees;

(3) Such action is necessary to meet requirements for public use specified by Federal regulations and such requirements are not reasonably satisfied by the Recipient, assignee, or licensee; or

(4) Such action is necessary because the agreement required by paragraph (i) of this Patent Rights clause has not been obtained or waived or because a licensee of the exclusive right to use or sell any subject invention in the U.S. is in breach of such agreement.

(k) Special Provisions for Awards With Nonprofit Organizations

If the Recipient is a nonprofit organization, it agrees that:

(1) Rights to a subject invention in the U.S. may not be assigned without the approval of DOE, except where such assignment is made to an organization which has as one of its primary functions the management of inventions, provided that such assignee will be subject to the same provisions as the Recipient;

(2) The Recipient will share royalties collected on a subject invention with the inventor, including Federal employee co-inventors (when DOE deems it appropriate) when the subject invention is assigned in accordance with 35 U.S.C. 202(e) and 37 CFR 401.10;

(3) The balance of any royalties or income earned by the Recipient with respect to subject inventions, after payment of expenses (including payments to inventors) incidental to the administration of subject inventions, will be utilized for the support of scientific or engineering research or education; and

(4) It will make efforts that are reasonable under the circumstances to attract licensees of subject inventions that are small business firms and that it will give preference to a small business firm if the Recipient determines that the small business firm has a plan or proposal for marketing the invention which, if executed, is equally likely to bring the invention to practical application as any plans or proposals from applicants that are not small business firms; provided that the Recipient is also satisfied that the small business firm has the capability and resources to carry out its plan or proposal. The decision whether to give a preference in any specific case will be at the discretion of the Recipient. However, the Recipient agrees that the

Secretary of Commerce may review the Recipient's licensing program and decisions regarding small business applicants, and the Recipient will negotiate changes to its licensing policies, procedures or practices with the Secretary when the Secretary's review discloses that the Recipient could take reasonable steps to implement more effectively the requirements of this paragraph (k)(4).

(l) Communications

All communications required by this Patent Rights clause should be sent to the DOE Patent Counsel address listed in the Award Document.

(m) Electronic Filing

Unless otherwise specified in the award, the information identified in paragraphs (f)(2) and (f)(3) may be electronically filed.

(End of clause)



## Cooperative Agreement Research, Development, or Demonstration Domestic Small Business

01. [FAR 52.227-1](#) Authorization and Consent (DEC 2007)  
Alternate I (APR 1984)
02. [FAR 52.227-2](#) Notice and Assistance Regarding Patent and Copyright  
Infringement (DEC 2007)
03. [2 CFR 910](#) Rights in Data – General  
Appendix A of Subpart D
04. [2 CFR 910](#) Patent Rights (Small Business Firms and Nonprofit  
Appendix A of Subpart D Organizations)
05. [Attachment 1](#) Determination of Exceptional Circumstances
06. [Attachment 2](#) U.S. Manufacturing Plan

NOTE: In reading these provisions, any reference to “contractor” shall mean “recipient,” and any reference to “contract” or “subcontract” shall mean “award” or “subaward.”

## **01. FAR 52.227-1 Authorization and Consent (DEC 2007) Alternate I (APR 1984)**

(a) The Government authorizes and consents to all use and manufacture of any invention described in and covered by a United States patent in the performance of this contract or any subcontract at any tier.

(b) The Contractor shall include the substance of this clause, including this paragraph (b), in all subcontracts that are expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold. However, omission of this clause from any subcontract, including those at or below the simplified acquisition threshold, does not affect this authorization and consent.

(End of clause)

## **02. FAR 52.227-2 Notice and Assistance Regarding Patent and Copyright Infringement (DEC 2007)**

(a) The Contractor shall report to the Contracting Officer, promptly and in reasonable written detail, each notice or claim of patent or copyright infringement based on the performance of this contract of which the Contractor has knowledge.

(b) In the event of any claim or suit against the Government on account of any alleged patent or copyright infringement arising out of the performance of this contract or out of the use of any supplies furnished or work or services performed under this contract, the Contractor shall furnish to the Government, when requested by the Contracting Officer, all evidence and information in the Contractor's possession pertaining to such claim or suit. Such evidence and information shall be furnished at the expense of the Government except where the Contractor has agreed to indemnify the Government.

(c) The Contractor shall include the substance of this clause, including this paragraph (c), in all subcontracts that are expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold.

(End of clause)

## **03. 2 CFR Part 910, Appendix A of Subpart D, Rights in Data - General**

(a) Definitions

*Computer Data Bases*, as used in this clause, means a collection of data in a form capable of, and for the purpose of, being stored in, processed, and operated on by a computer. The term does not include computer software.

*Computer software*, as used in this clause, means (i) computer programs which are data comprising a series of instructions, rules, routines or statements, regardless of the media in

which recorded, that allow or cause a computer to perform a specific operation or series of operations and (ii) data comprising source code listings, design details, algorithms, processes, flow charts, formulae, and related material that would enable the computer program to be produced, created or compiled. The term does not include computer data bases.

*Data*, as used in this clause, means recorded information, regardless of form or the media on which it may be recorded. The term includes technical data and computer software. The term does not include information incidental to administration, such as financial, administrative, cost or pricing, or management information.

*Form, fit, and function data*, as used in this clause, means data relating to items, components, or processes that are sufficient to enable physical and functional interchangeability, as well as data identifying source, size, configuration, mating, and attachment characteristics, functional characteristics, and performance requirements; except that for computer software it means data identifying source, functional characteristics, and performance requirements but specifically excludes the source code, algorithm, process, formulae, and flow charts of the software.

*Limited rights*, as used in this clause, means the rights of the Government in limited rights data as set forth in the Limited Rights Notice of subparagraph (g)(2) if included in this clause.

*Limited rights data*, as used in this clause, means data (other than computer software) developed at private expense that embody trade secrets or are commercial or financial and confidential or privileged.

*Restricted computer software*, as used in this clause, means computer software developed at private expense and that is a trade secret; is commercial or financial and is confidential or privileged; or is published copyrighted computer software; including minor modifications of such computer software.

*Restricted rights*, as used in this clause, means the rights of the Government in restricted computer software, as set forth in a Restricted Rights Notice of subparagraph (g)(3) if included in this clause, or as otherwise may be provided in a collateral agreement incorporated in and made part of this contract, including minor modifications of such computer software.

*Technical data*, as used in this clause, means data (other than computer software) which are of a scientific or technical nature. Technical data does not include computer software, but does include manuals and instructional materials and technical data formatted as a computer data base.

*Unlimited rights*, as used in this clause, means the right of the Government to use, disclose, reproduce, prepare derivative works, distribute copies to the public, and perform publicly and display publicly, in any manner and for any purpose, and to have or permit others to do so.

(b) Allocations of Rights

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this clause regarding copyright, the Government shall have unlimited rights in—

(i) Data first produced in the performance of this agreement;

(ii) Form, fit, and function data delivered under this agreement;

(iii) Data delivered under this agreement (except for restricted computer software) that constitute manuals or instructional and training material for installation, operation, or routine maintenance and repair of items, components, or processes delivered or furnished for use under this agreement; and

(iv) All other data delivered under this agreement unless provided otherwise for limited rights data or restricted computer software in accordance with paragraph (g) of this clause.

(2) The Recipient shall have the right to—

(i) Use, release to others, reproduce, distribute, or publish any data first produced or specifically used by the Recipient in the performance of this agreement, unless provided otherwise in paragraph (d) of this clause;

(ii) Protect from unauthorized disclosure and use those data which are limited rights data or restricted computer software to the extent provided in paragraph (g) of this clause;

(iii) Substantiate use of, add or correct limited rights, restricted rights, or copyright notices and to take over appropriate action, in accordance with paragraphs (e) and (f) of this clause; and

(iv) Establish claim to copyright subsisting in data first produced in the performance of this agreement to the extent provided in paragraph (c)(1) of this clause.

(c) Copyright

(1) Data first produced in the performance of this agreement. Unless provided otherwise in paragraph (d) of this clause, the Recipient may establish, without prior approval of the Contracting Officer, claim to copyright subsisting in data first produced in the performance of this agreement. When claim to copyright is made, the Recipient shall affix the applicable copyright notices of 17 U.S.C. 401 or 402 and acknowledgement of Government sponsorship (including agreement number) to the data when such data are delivered to the Government, as well as when the data are published or deposited for registration as a published work in the U.S. Copyright Office. For such copyrighted data, including computer software, the Recipient grants to the Government, and others acting on its behalf, a paid-up nonexclusive, irrevocable

worldwide license in such copyrighted data to reproduce, prepare derivative works, distribute copies to the public, and perform publicly and display publicly, by or on behalf of the Government.

(2) Data not first produced in the performance of this agreement. The Recipient shall not, without prior written permission of the Contracting Officer, incorporate in data delivered under this agreement any data not first produced in the performance of this agreement and which contains the copyright notice of 17 U.S.C. 401 or 402, unless the Recipient identifies such data and grants to the Government, or acquires on its behalf, a license of the same scope as set forth in paragraph (c)(1) of this clause; provided, however, that if such data are computer software the Government shall acquire a copyright license as set forth in paragraph (g)(3) of this clause if included in this agreement or as otherwise may be provided in a collateral agreement incorporated in or made part of this agreement.

(3) Removal of copyright notices. The Government agrees not to remove any copyright notices placed on data pursuant to this paragraph (c), and to include such notices on all reproductions of the data.

(d) Release, Publication and Use of Data

(1) The Recipient shall have the right to use, release to others, reproduce, distribute, or publish any data first produced or specifically used by the Recipient in the performance of this agreement, except to the extent such data may be subject to the Federal export control or national security laws or regulations, or unless otherwise provided in this paragraph of this clause or expressly set forth in this agreement.

(2) The Recipient agrees that to the extent it receives or is given access to data necessary for the performance of this award, which contain restrictive markings, the Recipient shall treat the data in accordance with such markings unless otherwise specifically authorized in writing by the contracting officer.

(e) Unauthorized Marking of Data

(1) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this agreement concerning inspection or acceptance, if any data delivered under this agreement are marked with the notices specified in paragraph (g)(2) or (g)(3) of this clause and use of such is not authorized by this clause, or if such data bears any other restrictive or limiting markings not authorized by this agreement, the Contracting Officer may at any time either return the data to the Recipient or cancel or ignore the markings. However, the following procedures shall apply prior to canceling or ignoring the markings.

(i) The Contracting Officer shall make written inquiry to the Recipient affording the Recipient 30 days from receipt of the inquiry to provide written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings;



(ii) If the Recipient fails to respond or fails to provide written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings within the 30-day period (or a longer time not exceeding 90 days approved in writing by the Contracting Officer for good cause shown), the Government shall have the right to cancel or ignore the markings at any time after said period and the data will no longer be made subject to any disclosure prohibitions.

(iii) If the Recipient provides written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings within the period set in paragraph (e)(1)(i) of this clause, the Contracting Officer shall consider such written justification and determine whether or not the markings are to be cancelled or ignored. If the Contracting Officer determines that the markings are authorized, the Recipient shall be so notified in writing. If the Contracting Officer determines, with concurrence of the head of the contracting activity, that the markings are not authorized, the Contracting Officer shall furnish the Recipient a written determination, which determination shall become the final agency decision regarding the appropriateness of the markings unless the Recipient files suit in a court of competent jurisdiction within 90 days of receipt of the Contracting Officer's decision. The Government shall continue to abide by the markings under this paragraph (e)(1)(iii) until final resolution of the matter either by the Contracting Officer's determination becoming final (in which instance the Government shall thereafter have the right to cancel or ignore the markings at any time and the data will no longer be made subject to any disclosure prohibitions), or by final disposition of the matter by court decision if suit is filed.

(2) The time limits in the procedures set forth in paragraph (e)(1) of this clause may be modified in accordance with agency regulations implementing the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) if necessary to respond to a request thereunder.

(f) Omitted or Incorrect Markings

(1) Data delivered to the Government without either the limited rights or restricted rights notice as authorized by paragraph (g) of this clause, or the copyright notice required by paragraph (c) of this clause, shall be deemed to have been furnished with unlimited rights, and the Government assumes no liability for the disclosure, use, or reproduction of such data. However, to the extent the data has not been disclosed without restriction outside the Government, the Recipient may request, within 6 months (or a longer time approved by the Contracting Officer for good cause shown) after delivery or such data, permission to have notices placed on qualifying data at the Recipient's expense, and the Contracting Officer may agree to do so if the Recipient:

- (i) Identifies the data to which the omitted notice is to be applied;
- (ii) Demonstrates that the omission of the notice was inadvertent;
- (iii) Establishes that the use of the proposed notice is authorized; and

(iv) Acknowledges that the Government has no liability with respect to the disclosure, use, or reproduction of any such data made prior to the addition of the notice or resulting from the omission of the notice.

(2) The Contracting Officer may also:

(i) Permit correction at the Recipient's expense of incorrect notices if the Recipient identifies the data on which correction of the notice is to be made, and demonstrates that the correct notice is authorized, or

(ii) Correct any incorrect notices.

(g) Protection of Limited Rights Data and Restricted Computer Software

When data other than that listed in paragraphs (b)(1)(i), (ii), and (iii) of this clause are specified to be delivered under this agreement and qualify as either limited rights data or restricted computer software, if the Recipient desires to continue protection of such data, the Recipient shall withhold such data and not furnish them to the Government under this agreement. As a condition to this withholding, the Recipient shall identify the data being withheld and furnish form, fit, and function data in lieu thereof. Limited rights data that are formatted as a computer data base for delivery to the Government are to be treated as limited rights data and not restricted computer software.

(h) Subaward/Contract

The Recipient has the responsibility to obtain from its subrecipients/contractors all data and rights therein necessary to fulfill the Recipient's obligations to the Government under this agreement. If a subrecipient/contractor refuses to accept terms affording the Government such rights, the Recipient shall promptly bring such refusal to the attention of the Contracting Officer and not proceed with the subaward/contract award without further authorization.

(i) Additional Data Requirements

In addition to the data specified elsewhere in this agreement to be delivered, the Contracting Officer may, at any time during agreement performance or within a period of 3 years after acceptance of all items to be delivered under this agreement, order any data first produced or specifically used in the performance of this agreement. This clause is applicable to all data ordered under this subparagraph. Nothing contained in this subparagraph shall require the Recipient to deliver any data the withholding of which is authorized by this clause, or data which are specifically identified in this agreement as not subject to this clause. When data are to be delivered under this subparagraph, the Recipient will be compensated for converting the data into the prescribed form, for reproduction, and for delivery.

(j) The recipient agrees, except as may be otherwise specified in this award for specific data items listed as not subject to this paragraph, that the Contracting Officer or an authorized representative may, up to three years after acceptance of all items to be delivered under this award, inspect at the Recipient's facility any data withheld pursuant to paragraph (g) of this clause, for purposes of verifying the Recipient's assertion pertaining to the limited rights or restricted rights status of the data or for evaluating work performance. Where the Recipient whose data are to be inspected demonstrates to the Contracting Officer that there would be a possible conflict of interest if the inspection were made by a particular representative, the Contracting Officer shall designate an alternate inspector.

(End of clause)

#### **04. 2 CFR 910, Appendix A of Subpart D, Patent Rights (Small Business Firms and Nonprofit Organizations)(as modified by the EERE/ARPA-E DEC)**

##### (a) Definitions

*Invention* means any invention or discovery which is or may be patentable or otherwise protectable under title 35 of the United States Code, or any novel variety of plant which is or may be protected under the Plant Variety Protection Act (7 U.S.C. 2321 *et seq.*).

*Made* when used in relation to any invention means the conception or first actual reduction to practice of such invention.

*Nonprofit organization* is defined in 2 CFR 200.70.

*Practical application* means to manufacture in the case of a composition or product, to practice in the case of a process or method, or to operate in the case of a machine or system; and, in each case, under such conditions as to establish that the invention is being utilized and that its benefits are to the extent permitted by law or Government regulations available to the public on reasonable terms.

*Small business firm* means a small business concern as defined at section 2 of Public Law 85-536 (16 U.S.C. 632) and implementing regulations of the Administrator of the Small Business Administration. For the purpose of this clause, the size standards for small business concerns involved in Government procurement and subcontracting at 13 CFR 121.3 through 121.8 and 13 CFR 121.3 through 121.12, respectively, will be used.

*Subject invention* means any invention of the Recipient conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the performance of work under this award, provided that in the case of a variety of plant, the date of determination (as defined in section 41(d) of the Plant Variety Protection Act, 7 U.S.C. 2401(d) must also occur during the period of award performance.

##### (b) Allocation of Principal Rights

The Recipient may retain the entire right, title, and interest throughout the world to each subject invention subject to the provisions of this Patent Rights clause and 35 U.S.C. 203. With respect to any subject invention in which the Recipient retains title, the Federal Government shall have a non-exclusive, nontransferable, irrevocable, paid-up license to practice or have practiced for or on behalf of the U.S. the subject invention throughout the world.

(c) Invention Disclosure, Election of Title and Filing of Patent Applications by Recipient

(1) The Recipient will disclose each subject invention to DOE within two months after the inventor discloses it in writing to Recipient personnel responsible for the administration of patent matters. The disclosure to DOE shall be in the form of a written report and shall identify the award under which the invention was made and the inventor(s). It shall be sufficiently complete in technical detail to convey a clear understanding to the extent known at the time of disclosure, of the nature, purpose, operation, and the physical, chemical, biological or electrical characteristics of the invention. The disclosure shall also identify any publication, on sale or public use of the invention and whether a manuscript describing the invention has been submitted for publication and, if so, whether it has been accepted for publication at the time of disclosure. In addition, after disclosure to DOE, the Recipient will promptly notify DOE of the acceptance of any manuscript describing the invention for publication or of any on sale or public use planned by the Recipient.

(2) The Recipient will elect in writing whether or not to retain title to any such invention by notifying DOE within two years of disclosure to DOE. However, in any case where publication, on sale, or public use has initiated the one-year statutory period wherein valid patent protection can still be obtained in the U.S., the period for election of title may be shortened by the agency to a date that is no more than 60 days prior to the end of the statutory period.

(3) The Recipient will file its initial patent application on an invention to which it elects to retain title within one year after election of title or, if earlier, prior to the end of any statutory period wherein valid patent protection can be obtained in the U.S. after a publication, on sale, or public use. The Recipient will file patent applications in additional countries or international patent offices within either ten months of the corresponding initial patent application, or six months from the date when permission is granted by the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks to file foreign patent applications when such filing has been prohibited by a Secrecy Order.

(4) Requests for extension of the time for disclosure to DOE, election, and filing under subparagraphs (c)(1), (2), and (3) of this clause may, at the discretion of DOE, be granted.

(d) Conditions When the Government May Obtain Title

The Recipient will convey to DOE, upon written request, title to any subject invention:

(1) If the Recipient fails to disclose or elect the subject invention within the times specified in paragraph (c) of this patent rights clause, or elects not to retain title; provided that DOE may only request title within 60 days after learning of the failure of the Recipient to disclose or elect within the specified times;

(2) In those countries in which the Recipient fails to file patent applications within the times specified in paragraph (c) of this Patent Rights clause; provided, however, that if the Recipient has filed a patent application in a country after the times specified in paragraph (c) of this Patent Rights clause, but prior to its receipt of the written request of DOE, the Recipient shall continue to retain title in that country; or

(3) In any country in which the Recipient decides not to continue the prosecution of any application for, to pay the maintenance fees on, or defend in a reexamination or opposition proceeding on, a patent on a subject invention.

(4) Upon breach of paragraph (h) or paragraph (n) on this Patent Rights clause.

(e) Minimum Rights to Recipient and Protection of the Recipient Right To File

(1) The Recipient will retain a non-exclusive royalty-free license throughout the world in each subject invention to which the Government obtains title, except if the Recipient fails to disclose the subject invention within the times specified in paragraph (c) of this Patent Rights clause or breaches paragraph (h) or paragraph (n) of this Patent Rights clause. The Recipient's license extends to its domestic subsidiaries and affiliates, if any, within the corporate structure of which the Recipient is a party and includes the right to grant sublicenses of the same scope of the extent the Recipient was legally obligated to do so at the time the award was awarded. The license is transferable only with the approval of DOE except when transferred to the successor of that part of the Recipient's business to which the invention pertains.

(2) The Recipient's domestic license may be revoked or modified by DOE to the extent necessary to achieve expeditious practical application of the subject invention pursuant to an application for an exclusive license submitted in accordance with applicable provisions at 37 CFR part 404 and the agency's licensing regulation, if any. This license will not be revoked in that field of use or the geographical areas in which the Recipient has achieved practical application and continues to make the benefits of the invention reasonably accessible to the public. The license in any foreign country may be revoked or modified at discretion of the funding Federal agency to the extent the Recipient, its licensees, or its domestic subsidiaries or affiliates have failed to achieve practical application in that foreign country.

(3) Before revocation or modification of the license, the funding Federal agency will furnish the Recipient a written notice of its intention to revoke or modify the license, and the Recipient will be allowed thirty days (or such other time as may be authorized by DOE for good cause shown by the Recipient) after the notice to show cause why the license should not be revoked or modified. The Recipient has the right to appeal, in accordance with applicable regulations in

37 CFR part 404 and the agency's licensing regulations, if any, concerning the licensing of Government-owned inventions, any decision concerning the revocation or modification of its license.

(f) Recipient Action To Protect Government's Interest

(1) The Recipient agrees to execute or to have executed and promptly deliver to DOE all instruments necessary to:

(i) Establish or confirm the rights the Government has throughout the world in those subject inventions for which the Recipient retains title; and

(ii) Convey title to DOE when requested under paragraph (d) of this Patent Rights clause, and to enable the government to obtain patent protection throughout the world in that subject invention.

(2) The Recipient agrees to require, by written agreement, its employees, other than clerical and non-technical employees, to disclose promptly in writing to personnel identified as responsible for the administration of patent matters and in a format suggested by the Recipient each subject invention made under this award in order that the Recipient can comply with the disclosure provisions of paragraph (c) of this Patent Rights clause, and to execute all papers necessary to file patent applications on subject inventions and to establish the Government's rights in the subject inventions. The disclosure format should require, as a minimum, the information requested by paragraph (c)(1) of this Patent Rights clause. The Recipient shall instruct such employees through the employee agreements or other suitable educational programs on the importance of reporting inventions in sufficient time to permit the filing of patent applications prior to U.S. or foreign statutory bars.

(3) The Recipient will notify DOE of any decision not to continue prosecution of a patent application, pay maintenance fees, or defend in a reexamination or opposition proceeding on a patent, in any country, not less than 30 days before the expiration of the response period required by the relevant patent office.

(4) The Recipient agrees to include, within the specification of any U.S. patent application and any patent issuing thereon covering a subject invention, the following statement: "This invention was made with Government support under (identify the award) awarded by (identify DOE). The Government has certain rights in this invention."

(g) Subaward/Contract

(1) The Recipient will include this Patent Rights clause, suitably modified to identify the parties, in all subawards/contracts, regardless of tier, for experimental, developmental or research work to be performed by a small business firm or nonprofit organization. The subrecipient/contractor will retain all rights provided for the Recipient in this Patent Rights

clause, and the Recipient will not, as part of the consideration for awarding the subcontract, obtain rights in the subcontractors' subject inventions.

(2) The Recipient will include in all other subawards/contracts, regardless of tier, for experimental, developmental or research work, the patent rights clause required by 2 CFR 910.362(c).

(3) In the case of subawards/contracts at any tier, DOE, the Recipient, and the subrecipient/contractor agree that the mutual obligations of the parties created by this clause constitute a contract between the subrecipient/contractor and DOE with respect to those matters covered by the clause.

(h) Reporting on Utilization of Subject Inventions

The Recipient agrees to submit on request periodic reports no more frequently than annually on the utilization of a subject invention or on efforts at obtaining such utilization that are being made by the Recipient or its licensees or assignees. Such reports shall include information regarding the status of development, date of first commercial sale or use, gross royalties received by the Recipient, products that embody or are made through the use of the subject invention, manufacturing locations of such products and such other data and information as DOE may reasonably specify. The Recipient also agrees to provide additional reports in connection with any march-in proceeding undertaken by DOE in accordance with paragraph (j) of this Patent Rights clause. As required by 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(5), DOE agrees it will not disclose such information to persons outside the Government without the permission of the Recipient.

(i) Preference for United States Industry.

Notwithstanding any other provision of this Patent Rights clause, the Recipient agrees that neither it nor any assignee will grant to any person the exclusive right to use or sell any subject invention in the U.S. unless such person agrees that any products embodying the subject invention or produced through the use of the subject invention will be manufactured substantially in the U.S. However, in individual cases, the requirement for such an agreement may be waived by DOE upon a showing by the Recipient or its assignee that reasonable but unsuccessful efforts have been made to grant licenses on similar terms to potential licensees that would be likely to manufacture substantially in the U.S. or that under the circumstances domestic manufacture is not commercially feasible.

(j) March-in-Rights

The Recipient agrees that with respect to any subject invention in which it has acquired title, DOE has the right in accordance with procedures at 37 CFR 401.6 and any supplemental regulations of the Agency to require the Recipient, an assignee or exclusive licensee of a subject invention to grant a non-exclusive, partially exclusive, or exclusive license in any field of use to a

responsible applicant or applicants, upon terms that are reasonable under the circumstances and if the Recipient, assignee, or exclusive licensee refuses such a request, DOE has the right to grant such a license itself if DOE determines that:

(1) Such action is necessary because the Recipient or assignee has not taken or is not expected to take within a reasonable time, effective steps to achieve practical application of the subject invention in such field of use;

(2) Such action is necessary to alleviate health or safety needs which are not reasonably satisfied by the Recipient, assignee, or their licensees;

(3) Such action is necessary to meet requirements for public use specified by Federal regulations and such requirements are not reasonably satisfied by the Recipient, assignee, or licensee; or

(4) Such action is necessary because the agreement required by paragraph (i) of this Patent Rights clause has not been obtained or waived or because a licensee of the exclusive right to use or sell any subject invention in the U.S. is in breach of such agreement.

(k) Special Provisions for Awards With Nonprofit Organizations

If the Recipient is a nonprofit organization, it agrees that:

(1) Rights to a subject invention in the U.S. may not be assigned without the approval of DOE, except where such assignment is made to an organization which has as one of its primary functions the management of inventions, provided that such assignee will be subject to the same provisions as the Recipient;

(2) The Recipient will share royalties collected on a subject invention with the inventor, including Federal employee co-inventors (when DOE deems it appropriate) when the subject invention is assigned in accordance with 35 U.S.C. 202(e) and 37 CFR 401.10;

(3) The balance of any royalties or income earned by the Recipient with respect to subject inventions, after payment of expenses (including payments to inventors) incidental to the administration of subject inventions, will be utilized for the support of scientific or engineering research or education; and

(4) It will make efforts that are reasonable under the circumstances to attract licensees of subject inventions that are small business firms and that it will give preference to a small business firm if the Recipient determines that the small business firm has a plan or proposal for marketing the invention which, if executed, is equally likely to bring the invention to practical application as any plans or proposals from applicants that are not small business firms; provided that the Recipient is also satisfied that the small business firm has the capability and resources to carry out its plan or proposal. The decision whether to give a preference in any



specific case will be at the discretion of the Recipient. However, the Recipient agrees that the Secretary of Commerce may review the Recipient's licensing program and decisions regarding small business applicants, and the Recipient will negotiate changes to its licensing policies, procedures or practices with the Secretary when the Secretary's review discloses that the Recipient could take reasonable steps to implement more effectively the requirements of this paragraph (k)(4).

(l) Communications

All communications required by this Patent Rights clause should be sent to the DOE Patent Counsel address listed in the Award Document.

(m) Electronic Filing

Unless otherwise specified in the award, the information identified in paragraphs (f)(2) and (f)(3) may be electronically filed.

(n) U.S. Manufacturing Plan

(1) The Recipient agrees that a purpose of this contract is to provide substantial benefit to the U.S. economy. In exchange for the benefits and rights received under this contract, the Recipient agrees to comply with the U.S. Manufacturing Plan that is attached to these IP provisions as Attachment 2 and was submitted as part of its proposal upon which this contract is based, *including, but not limited to, the following commitments:*

*[recite any specific and enforceable commitments from the plan].*

(2) The requirement and enforcement of the U.S. Manufacturing Plan is in accordance with the Determination of Exceptional Circumstances (DEC) executed by DOE on September 11, 2013. A copy of the DEC is attached to these IP provisions as Attachment 1. As set forth in 37 CFR 401.4, the Recipient has the right to appeal the imposition of the DEC within 30 working days from the time it receives a copy of it.

(End of clause)

Attachment 1: The Determination of Exceptional Circumstances

Attachment 2: U.S. Manufacturing Plan



## Department of Energy

Washington, DC 20585

September 9, 2013

### **DETERMINATION OF EXCEPTIONAL CIRCUMSTANCES UNDER THE BAYH-DOLE ACT FOR ENERGY EFFICIENCY, RENEWABLE ENERGY, AND ADVANCED ENERGY TECHNOLOGIES**

Under the Bayh-Dole Act, 35 U.S.C. §§ 200-12 ("Bayh-Dole"), Federal agencies may determine that "exceptional circumstances" exist such that a modification in the patent rights disposition provided under the Act would better promote its objectives. The Department of Energy ("DOE") has determined that exceptional circumstances exist for disposition of patent rights arising under research, development, demonstration, and market transformation projects involving energy efficiency, renewable energy, and advanced energy technologies as described in Title IX, Subtitles A through D of the Energy Policy Act of 2005 (42 U.S.C. 16191 through 16256), and Title V, Section 5012 of the America COMPETES Act of 2007 (as amended by Title IX, Section 904 of the America COMPETES Act of 2010)(42 U.S.C. 16538) to better promote U.S. manufacturing.

These technologies are (1) energy efficiency, storage, integration, and related technologies, including (as examples only) for buildings, transportation, and energy-intensive industries; (2) renewable energy technologies, including (as examples only) for wind power, water power, photovoltaic, solar thermal, geothermal power, hydrogen power, biomass power, biofuel power, and fuel cells; and (3) advanced energy technologies, including transformational, breakthrough energy technologies in a variety of technical areas that have the potential to lead to revolutionary advances in the marketplace, including (as examples only) projects for advanced components and materials.

To better meet the objectives of Bayh-Dole, which include the goal of promoting commercialization of inventions by United States industry and labor, DOE proposes the use of U.S. Manufacturing Plans in funding agreements that support research, development, and demonstration of energy efficiency, renewable energy, and advanced energy technologies. The U.S. Manufacturing Plans consist of commitments proposed by applicants in response to funding opportunity announcements (FOAs), would be used by DOE during its evaluation and selection process, and would be formally incorporated into funding agreements following award negotiations. DOE may require the submission of U.S. Manufacturing Plans by all types of applicants, including large businesses, small businesses, and non-profit organizations. Once incorporated into a funding agreement, U.S. Manufacturing Plans may be enforced, among other possible remedies, through forfeiture of rights to subject inventions. Except for the U.S.



Manufacturing Plans and the enforcement mechanism, the patent rights granted to certain funding recipients under Bayh-Dole remain the same. In accordance with 37 C.F.R. 401.3(e), DOE makes the following determination of exceptional circumstances, along with the supporting statement of facts and analysis.

I. *The patent rights provided by Bayh-Dole may be modified to better promote the objectives of the Act when an agency determines that “exceptional circumstances” exist.*

a. *Bayh-Dole provides a standard set of patent rights to recipients of federal funds under a funding agreement.*

Rights to inventions that contractors, subcontractors, as well as recipients and sub-recipients of grants and cooperative agreements (“funding recipients”) conceive or first actually reduce to practice in performance of work under a funding agreement (“subject inventions”) are governed by Bayh-Dole and the federal regulations that implement Bayh-Dole.<sup>1</sup> A “funding agreement” is “any contract, grant, or cooperative agreement entered into by any Federal agency . . . and any contractor for the performance of experimental, developmental, or research work funded in whole or in part by the Federal Government.”<sup>2</sup>

Bayh-Dole allows certain non-profit organizations and domestic small businesses who are recipients of a funding agreement (“Bayh-Dole entities”) to elect title to their subject inventions subject to limited government rights, and further provides that the recipients must comply with certain disclosure, patent prosecution, and other requirements.<sup>3</sup> In order to comply with Bayh-Dole, Federal agencies are required to use a standard patent rights clause for funding agreements with Bayh-Dole entities.<sup>4</sup>

b. *Standard patent rights under Bayh-Dole may be modified when “exceptional circumstances” exist and a modification would better promote the Act’s objectives.*

A Federal agency may restrict, eliminate, or otherwise modify rights provided to Bayh-Dole entities and implemented through the standard patent rights clause in “exceptional circumstances” when the Federal agency determines that a restriction, elimination, or modification of the rights and requirements provided by Bayh-Dole would better promote the

---

<sup>1</sup> 35 U.S.C. §§ 200-212; 37 C.F.R. Part 401.

<sup>2</sup> 35 U.S.C. § 201 (b).

<sup>3</sup> Bayh-Dole does not provide large business recipients the right to elect title to subject inventions under DOE statutory authorities. 42 U.S.C. §§ 2182 and 5908. Bayh-Dole also does not apply to Technology Investment Agreements, under DOE’s Other Transactions Authority. 42 U.S.C. § 7256.

<sup>4</sup> 37 C.F.R. § 401.3(a).

Act's objectives.<sup>5</sup> The degree or scope of the modification should only be to the extent necessary to address the exceptional circumstances.<sup>6</sup>

- II. *Promoting domestic manufacture of products derived from federally-funded research is a primary objective of Bayh-Dole.*

A fundamental objective of Bayh-Dole is to promote U.S. manufacturing by encouraging the domestic manufacture of products derived from federally-funded research. Among the listed objectives of Bayh-Dole is "to promote the commercialization and public availability of inventions made in the United States by United States industry and labor."<sup>7</sup>

Bayh-Dole was enacted in 1980, in part, to address a growing concern regarding the ability of U.S. manufacturing to compete in an increasingly globalized marketplace. The House Report filed by the Judiciary Committee when Bayh-Dole was presented to Congress identified the need for legislation to address the "failure of American industry to keep pace with the increased productivity of foreign competitors."<sup>8</sup> Bayh-Dole's passage was spurred in part by the President's Advisory Committee on Industrial Innovation, convened in 1978 to study the possibilities for encouraging increased productivity in the United States. Chief among the recommendations of the committee was a legislative proposal to promote industrial innovation through the commercial manufacture of federally-funded technologies. The legislative proposal led to Bayh-Dole.<sup>9</sup>

- III. *DOE has determined that exceptional circumstances exist because Bayh-Dole's objective of promoting U.S. manufacturing of federally-funded research is not fully being met with respect to energy efficiency, renewable energy, and advanced energy technologies.*

The current state of domestic manufacturing for energy efficiency, renewable energy manufacturing, and advanced energy technologies makes clear that the objective of promoting U.S. manufacture of U.S. inventions has not been adequately achieved.

---

<sup>5</sup> 35 U.S.C. § 202(a)(ii); 37 C.F.R. § 401.3(a).

<sup>6</sup> 37 C.F.R. § 401.3(b).

<sup>7</sup> 35 U.S.C. § 200.

<sup>8</sup> H.R. REP. 96-1307, 1, 1980 U.S.C.C.A.N. 6460, 6460 ("Need for the Legislation: Many analysts of the U.S. economy have warned that the roots of the current recession lie in a longer term economic malaise which arises out of a failure of American industry to keep pace with the increased productivity of foreign competitors.").

<sup>9</sup> *Id.* at 6462. See U.S. DEPT. OF COMMERCE, ADVISORY COMMITTEE ON INDUSTRIAL INNOVATION: FINAL REPORT (Sept. 1979).

- a. *The U.S. has made significant investments in energy efficiency, renewable energy, and advanced energy technologies through DOE.*

The United States is a leader in the research and development of energy efficiency, renewable energy, and advanced energy technologies. America's leadership in research and development has been maintained in part due to DOE's significant and strategic investments in these types of technologies. The investments are made primarily through two DOE organizations: (1) the Office of Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy (EERE) and (2) the Advanced Research Projects Agency-Energy (ARPA-E).

EERE works to strengthen the United States' energy security, environmental quality, and economic vitality in public-private partnerships. It supports this goal through (1) enhancing energy efficiency and productivity; and (2) bringing clean, reliable and affordable energy technologies to the marketplace. EERE partners with business, industry, universities, national laboratories, consumers, federal energy managers, inventors, states, and tribes to research, develop, and advance energy efficiency and renewable energy technologies. EERE funds R&D in programs that include building technologies, advanced manufacturing, vehicle technologies, weatherization technologies, bio-energy technologies, fuel cell technologies, geothermal technologies, solar energy technologies, and wind and water power technologies. EERE programs are focused on developing next-generation energy efficiency and renewable energy technologies and lowering the associated cost so that these technologies are broadly adopted and used across the United States. EERE has invested \$28.8 billion in energy efficiency and renewable energy technologies over the last ten years.

ARPA-E is dedicated to advancing energy technologies that have the potential to be transformational in the marketplace. ARPA-E works to identify high-risk, high-reward technical areas of interest to advance the agency's three mission areas: to enhance our nation's economic security, enhance our nation's energy security, and reduce energy-related emissions. ARPA-E enters into funding agreements with businesses, non-profit research organizations, universities, and national laboratories to research, develop and advance energy technologies that industry and other government programs are not likely to support because of technical and financial uncertainty.

In its first four years of operation, ARPA-E has invested more than \$777 million in advanced energy technologies, including approximately 285 research and development projects selected under 14 targeted FOAs and two open FOAs. In addition, ARPA-E has undertaken robust technology transfer and outreach activities to maximize the return on taxpayer investment through ARPA-E-funded technologies meeting their full commercial potential. Critical success in ARPA-E projects has spurred millions of dollars in follow-on private-sector funding, and a number of ARPA-E awardees have formed start-up companies as a result of ARPA-E funding.

- b. *Despite DOE's significant investment in energy efficiency, renewable energy, and advanced energy technologies research, development, and deployment, U.S. clean energy manufacturing lags behind other nations.*

Notwithstanding its leadership in research, development, and deployment of energy efficiency, renewable energy, and advanced energy technologies, the U.S. lags behind other nations in the manufacturing of those technologies. For example, China has 711 commissioned renewable energy manufacturing plants, five times as many as the U.S.<sup>10</sup> China has an additional 13 partially commissioned plants and 122 under construction, for a total of 60% of all renewable energy plants on record.<sup>11</sup> The U.S. has only an additional 5 partially commissioned plants and 18 under construction.<sup>12</sup> More particularly, in the field of solar technologies, China currently has 523 fully commissioned solar manufacturing plants (44% of world total) and Germany has 96 (8% of world total), while the US has 87 (7% of world total).<sup>13</sup> In the area of wind power technology, China has 109 wind manufacturing plants, or 41% of the world total.<sup>14</sup> India has 34 wind manufacturing plants, or 14% of the world's total.<sup>15</sup> The U.S. has only 23 plants, or 1.0% of the world total.<sup>16</sup> According to consulting firm MAKE Consulting, U.S. manufacturing capacity to produce wind turbine components is insufficient, in many cases, even to keep up with U.S. demand, much less demand in foreign markets.<sup>17</sup>

- c. *Congress has expressly recognized the need to improve the level of U.S. manufacturing from DOE's investments in energy efficiency, renewable energy, and advanced energy technologies.*

In the accompanying House Report for the 2013 Energy and Water Appropriations Bill, the Committee on Appropriations identified the specific need for DOE to take a leadership role in improving U.S. manufacturing and domestic intellectual property retention:

The Department's research and development efforts yield several thousand patents and licenses each year, and taxpayers expect their support to result in commercialized technologies that benefit both American consumers and American industry. This expectation is not met when intellectual property that

---

<sup>10</sup> *Industry Intelligence*, BLOOMBERG NEW ENERGY FINANCE, <http://www.bnef.com/> (last visited Feb. 12, 2013).

<sup>11</sup> *Id.*

<sup>12</sup> *Id.*

<sup>13</sup> Bloomberg New Energy Finance, *supra* note 10.

<sup>14</sup> *Id.*

<sup>15</sup> *Id.*

<sup>16</sup> *Id.*

<sup>17</sup> Whitehouse.gov "Promoting Clean, Renewable Energy: Investments in Wind and Solar" 2010 <http://www.whitehouse.gov/recovery/innovations/clean-renewable-energy#19>

was developed with public funding is commercialized only by foreign manufacturers. The Committee believes that intellectual property policies offer substantial opportunities to encourage domestic manufacturing without obstructing commercial efficiency, eroding the value of intellectual property, or under-mining free trade. The technology transfer efforts of the Department should support domestic manufacturing wherever possible and the Department must take proactive steps to ensure taxpayer-funded research and development result in domestic jobs and revenues.<sup>18</sup>

The Committee requested that DOE examine what authorities are available to control intellectual property, specifically including the Bayh-Dole Act.<sup>19</sup>

Congress has also emphasized the importance of U.S. manufacturing through the authorizing statute for ARPA-E. Specifically, Congress established ARPA-E through the passage of the America Competes Act of 2007 and, among other things, charged ARPA-E with accelerating “the research and development of manufacturing processes for novel energy technologies.”<sup>20</sup> As a reflection of Congress’s focus on U.S. manufacturing, ARPA-E responsibility regarding research and development of manufacturing was modified in the America Competes Reauthorization Act of 2010 to state the following: “research and development of advanced manufacturing process and technologies for the *domestic manufacturing* of novel energy technologies.” (emphasis added)<sup>21</sup>

It is critical that energy efficiency, renewable energy, and advanced energy technologies funded by DOE support manufacturing in the United States, particularly in view of the necessity of creating and maintaining jobs, including manufacturing jobs, in the U.S. The objectives of DOE’s research and development programs are to decrease the dependence of the U.S. on foreign energy supplies, enhance U.S. economic and energy security, increase the export of renewable generation equipment from the U.S., and ensure that the United States maintains a technological lead in developing and deploying next-generation energy technologies.<sup>22</sup> A strong and vibrant domestic manufacturing base is needed for these objectives to be met. If the U.S. cannot maintain a manufacturing base for energy efficiency, renewable energy, and advanced energy technologies then it will remain dependent on foreign energy supplies and fail to achieve economic, energy, and national security.

---

<sup>18</sup> H.R. Rep. No. 112-462 (May 2, 2012) at 81.

<sup>19</sup> *Id.* at 82.

<sup>20</sup> America COMPETES Act, Pub. L. 110-69, § 5012 (2007).

<sup>21</sup> America COMPETES Reauthorization Act of 2010, Pub. L. 111-358, § 904 (2010).

<sup>22</sup> 42 U.S.C. § 16231(a).

IV. *EERE and ARPA-E will implement U.S. Manufacturing Plans to further promote the U.S. manufacture of inventions resulting from Federally-funded research.*

a. *U.S. Manufacturing Plans may be required under a FOA and may be used as a basis for selection.*

Depending on the nature of the FOA, EERE and ARPA-E may require a U.S. Manufacturing Plan from each applicant of the FOA as part of its application. The U.S. Manufacturing Plan will represent the applicant's measurable commitment to support U.S. manufacturing of the technologies related to its EERE or ARPA-E funding agreement. The Plans shall apply equally to all types of applicants, including large businesses, small businesses, and non-profit organizations. Once incorporated into a funding agreement, the U.S. Manufacturing Plan will provide that it may be enforced, among other possible remedies, through forfeiture of rights to subject inventions. Except for the U.S. Manufacturing Plan proposed by the applicant and the enforcement mechanism, the patent rights of funding recipients granted by Bayh-Dole remain the same.

The nature and specificity of the applicants' U.S. Manufacturing Plans will vary based on the FOA and the program issuing the FOA. A higher level of specificity may be required in the U.S. Manufacturing Plans for technologies at higher technology readiness levels due to the greater certainty surrounding the commercialization of these technologies. U.S. Manufacturing Plans submitted in response to FOAs targeting technologies at high technology readiness levels or demonstration activities should include specific commitments to manufacturing in the U.S. For example, the U.S. Manufacturing Plan may specify products related to the funding agreement that will be manufactured in the U.S. or may identify investments in U.S. facilities to support product manufacture. U.S. Manufacturing Plans submitted in response to FOAs directed at technologies at lower technology readiness levels may have fewer specific manufacturing details and may focus more on licensing and other strategies to promote U.S. manufacturing.

The weight given to the U.S. Manufacturing Plans during the review and selection process likely will also vary based on the particular FOA and may be part of the evaluation or merit criteria. For example, the U.S. Manufacturing Plans may constitute 30% of the overall merit review score of the proposals. Alternatively, the U.S. Manufacturing Plans may be treated as a qualitative program policy factor, thereby allowing the selecting official to give preference to applications based on the U.S. Manufacturing Plans. FOAs directed to technologies at high technology readiness levels or demonstration type activities may require greater consideration of applicants' U.S. Manufacturing Plans.

Following selection and award negotiations, the U.S. Manufacturing Plan will be incorporated into the funding agreement. The funding agreement may further require that the



funding recipient submit annual reports to DOE (including after expiration of the funding period) to demonstrate compliance with the U.S. Manufacturing Plan.

The funding agreement terms and conditions will further provide for the remedies upon breach of the U.S. Manufacturing Plan. Individual FOAs, for example, may specify remedies such as repayment (including repayment with interest) of the DOE funding received under the funding agreement. Remedies may also include a loss of all rights to subject inventions by the funding recipient, including title reverting back to DOE if the funding recipient had title to the subject inventions.

*b. The standard patent rights clause will be modified to allow U.S. Manufacturing Plans to be enforceable and to serve as a basis for selection.*

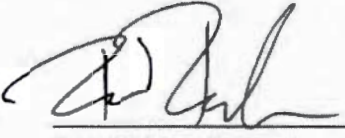
To the extent that a U.S. Manufacturing Plan is connected to subject inventions or that the remedy for a breach of a U.S. Manufacturing Plan is connected to subject inventions (e.g., title reverts back to DOE), the standard patent rights clause for Bayh-Dole entities will be modified accordingly. The modification would be necessary to implement and enforce the U.S. Manufacturing Plan proposed by the Bayh-Dole entity and was in part the purpose for selecting the Bayh-Dole entity's proposal.

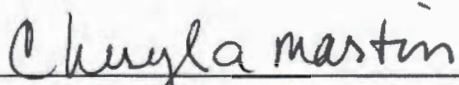
The funding recipient, including any Bayh-Dole entity, may request a waiver or modification of the U.S. Manufacturing Plan from DOE upon a satisfactory showing that the original U.S. Manufacturing Plan is no longer economically feasible and where the funding recipient can demonstrate an alternate net benefit to the U.S. economy notwithstanding the requested waiver or modification.


V. *Conclusion*

EERE and ARPA-E have determined that exceptional circumstances exist for energy efficiency, renewable energy, and advanced energy technologies. The U.S. Manufacturing Plan strategy described herein would better promote the objectives of Bayh-Dole by providing stronger support to U.S. manufacturing. Moreover, DOE is not imposing additional restrictions, requirements, or modifications from the standard patent rights clause beyond what is necessary to address the exceptional circumstances.

Any Bayh-Dole entity affected by this determination of exceptional circumstances has the right, and will be informed of that right, to appeal it.<sup>23</sup>

Approved:  \_\_\_\_\_ Date: 09/05/13  
DAVID DANIELSON  
ASSISTANT SECRETARY  
FOR ENERGY EFFICIENCY AND RENEWABLE ENERGY

Approved:  \_\_\_\_\_ Date: 9/9/13  
CHERYL MARTIN  
DEPUTY DIRECTOR  
FOR ADVANCED RESEARCH PROJECTS AGENCY-ENERGY

Approved:  \_\_\_\_\_ Date: Sept 11, 2013  
GENA E. CADIEUX  
DEPUTY GENERAL COUNSEL  
FOR TECHNOLOGY TRANSFER AND PROCUREMENT

<sup>23</sup> See 35 U.S.C. § 202(b)(4); 37 C.F.R. § 401.4.



## Cooperative Agreement - Special Data Statute Research, Development, or Demonstration Domestic Small Business

01. [FAR 52.227-1](#) Authorization and Consent (DEC 2007)  
Alternate I (APR 1984)
02. [FAR 52.227-2](#) Notice and Assistance Regarding Patent and Copyright  
Infringement (DEC 2007)
03. [2 CFR 910](#) Rights in Data – Programs Covered under Special Data  
Appendix A of Subpart D Statutes
04. [2 CFR 910](#) Patent Rights (Small Business Firms and Nonprofit  
Appendix A of Subpart D Organizations)

NOTE: In reading these provisions, any reference to “contractor” shall mean “recipient,” and any reference to “contract” or “subcontract” shall mean “award” or “subaward.”

## **01. FAR 52.227-1 Authorization and Consent (DEC 2007) Alternate I (APR 1984)**

(a) The Government authorizes and consents to all use and manufacture of any invention described in and covered by a United States patent in the performance of this contract or any subcontract at any tier.

(b) The Contractor shall include the substance of this clause, including this paragraph (b), in all subcontracts that are expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold. However, omission of this clause from any subcontract, including those at or below the simplified acquisition threshold, does not affect this authorization and consent.

(End of clause)

## **02. FAR 52.227-2 Notice and Assistance Regarding Patent and Copyright Infringement (DEC 2007)**

(a) The Contractor shall report to the Contracting Officer, promptly and in reasonable written detail, each notice or claim of patent or copyright infringement based on the performance of this contract of which the Contractor has knowledge.

(b) In the event of any claim or suit against the Government on account of any alleged patent or copyright infringement arising out of the performance of this contract or out of the use of any supplies furnished or work or services performed under this contract, the Contractor shall furnish to the Government, when requested by the Contracting Officer, all evidence and information in the Contractor's possession pertaining to such claim or suit. Such evidence and information shall be furnished at the expense of the Government except where the Contractor has agreed to indemnify the Government.

(c) The Contractor shall include the substance of this clause, including this paragraph (c), in all subcontracts that are expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold.

(End of clause)

## **03. 2 CFR 910, Appendix A of Subpart D, Rights in Data - Programs Covered Under Special Data Statutes**

(a) Definitions

Computer Data Bases, as used in this clause, means a collection of data in a form capable of, and for the purpose of, being stored in, processed, and operated on by a computer. The term does not include computer software.

Computer software, as used in this clause, means

(i) computer programs which are data comprising a series of instructions, rules, routines, or statements, regardless of the media in which recorded, that allow or cause a computer to perform a specific operation or series of operations and

(ii) data comprising source code listings, design details, algorithms, processes, flow charts, formulae and related material that would enable the computer program to be produced, created or compiled. The term does not include computer data bases.

Data, as used in this clause, means recorded information, regardless of form or the media on which it may be recorded. The term includes technical data and computer software. The term does not include information incidental to administration, such as financial, administrative, cost or pricing or management information.

Form, fit, and function data, as used in this clause, means data relating to items, components, or processes that are sufficient to enable physical and functional interchangeability as well as data identifying source, size, configuration, mating and attachment characteristics, functional characteristics, and performance requirements except that for computer software it means data identifying source, functional characteristics, and performance requirements but specifically excludes the source code, algorithm, process, formulae, and flow charts of the software.

Limited rights data, as used in this clause, means data (other than computer software) developed at private expense that embody trade secrets or are commercial or financial and confidential or privileged.

Restricted computer software, as used in this clause, means computer software developed at private expense and that is a trade secret; is commercial or financial and confidential or privileged; or is published copyrighted computer software; including modifications of such computer software.

Protected data, as used in this clause, means technical data or commercial or financial data first produced in the performance of the award which, if it had been obtained from and first produced by a non-federal party, would be a trade secret or commercial or financial information that is privileged or confidential under the meaning of 5 U.S.C. 552(b)(4) and which data is marked as being protected data by a party to the award.

Protected rights, as used in this clause, mean the rights in protected data set forth in the Protected Rights Notice of paragraph (g) of this clause.

Technical data, as used in this clause, means that data which are of a scientific or technical nature. Technical data does not include computer software, but does include manuals and instructional materials and technical data formatted as a computer data base.

Unlimited rights, as used in this clause, means the right of the Government to use, disclose, reproduce, prepare derivative works, distribute copies to the public, and perform publicly and display publicly, in any manner and for any purpose whatsoever, and to have or permit others to do so.

(b) Allocation of Rights

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this clause regarding copyright, the Government shall have unlimited rights in—

(i) Data specifically identified in this agreement as data to be delivered without restriction;

(ii) Form, fit, and function data delivered under this agreement;

(iii) Data delivered under this agreement (except for restricted computer software) that constitute manuals or instructional and training material for installation, operation, or routine maintenance and repair of items, components, or processes delivered or furnished for use under this agreement; and

(iv) All other data delivered under this agreement unless provided otherwise for protected data in accordance with paragraph (g) of this clause or for limited rights data or restricted computer software in accordance with paragraph (h) of this clause.

(2) The Recipient shall have the right to—

(i) Protect rights in protected data delivered under this agreement in the manner and to the extent provided in paragraph (g) of this clause;

(ii) Withhold from delivery those data which are limited rights data or restricted computer software to the extent provided in paragraph (h) of this clause;

(iii) Substantiate use of, add, or correct protected rights or copyrights notices and to take other appropriate action, in accordance with paragraph (e) of this clause; and

(iv) Establish claim to copyright subsisting in data first produced in the performance of this agreement to the extent provided in paragraph (c)(1) of this clause.

(c) Copyright

(1) Data first produced in the performance of this agreement. Except as otherwise specifically provided in this agreement, the Recipient may establish, without the prior approval of the Contracting Officer, claim to copyright subsisting in any data first produced in the performance of this agreement. If claim to copyright is made, the Recipient shall affix the applicable copyright notice of 17 U.S.C. 401 or 402 and acknowledgment of Government sponsorship (including agreement number) to the data when such data are delivered to the Government, as well as when the data are published or deposited for registration as a published work in the U.S. Copyright Office. For such copyrighted data, including computer software, the Recipient grants to the Government, and others acting on its behalf, a paid-up nonexclusive, irrevocable, worldwide license to reproduce, prepare derivative works, distribute copies to the public, and perform publicly and display publicly, by or on behalf of the Government, for all such data.

(2) Data not first produced in the performance of this agreement. The Recipient shall not, without prior written permission of the Contracting Officer, incorporate in data delivered under this agreement any data that are not first produced in the performance of this agreement and that contain the copyright notice of 17 U.S.C. 401 or 402, unless the Recipient identifies such data and grants to the Government, or acquires on its behalf, a license of the same scope as set forth in paragraph (c)(1) of this clause; provided, however, that if such data are computer software, the Government shall acquire a copyright license as set forth in paragraph (h)(3) of this clause if included in this agreement or as otherwise may be provided in a collateral agreement incorporated or made a part of this agreement.

(3) Removal of copyright notices. The Government agrees not to remove any copyright notices placed on data pursuant to this paragraph (c), and to include such notices on all reproductions of the data.

(d) Release, Publication and Use of Data

(1) The Receipt shall have the right to use, release to others, reproduce, distribute, or publish any data first produced or specifically used by the Recipient in the performance of this contract, except to the extent such data may be subject to the Federal export control or national security laws or regulations, or unless otherwise provided in this paragraph of this clause or expressly set forth in this contract.

(2) The Recipient agrees that to the extent it receives or is given access to data necessary for the performance of this agreement which contain restrictive markings, the Recipient shall treat the data in accordance with such markings unless otherwise specifically authorized in writing by the Contracting Officer.

(e) Unauthorized Marking of Data

(1) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this agreement concerning inspection or acceptance, if any data delivered under this agreement are marked with the notices specified in

paragraph (g)(2) or (g)(3) of this clause and use of such is not authorized by this clause, or if such data bears any other restrictive or limiting markings not authorized by this agreement, the Contracting Officer may at any time either return the data to the Recipient or cancel or ignore the markings. However, the following procedures shall apply prior to canceling or ignoring the markings.

(i) The Contracting Officer shall make written inquiry to the Recipient affording the Recipient 30 days from receipt of the inquiry to provide written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings;

(ii) If the Recipient fails to respond or fails to provide written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings within the 30-day period (or a longer time not exceeding 90 days approved in writing by the Contracting Officer for good cause shown), the Government shall have the right to cancel or ignore the markings at any time after said period and the data will no longer be made subject to any disclosure prohibitions.

(iii) If the Recipient provides written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings within the period set in subdivision (e)(1)(i) of this clause, the Contracting Officer shall consider such written justification and determine whether or not the markings are to be cancelled or ignored. If the Contracting Officer determines that the markings are authorized, the Recipient shall be so notified in writing. If the Contracting Officer determines, with concurrence of the head of the contracting activity, that the markings are not authorized, the Contracting Officer shall furnish the Recipient a written determination, which determination shall become the final agency decision regarding the appropriateness of the markings unless the Recipient files suit in a court of competent jurisdiction within 90 days of receipt of the Contracting Officer's decision. The Government shall continue to abide by the markings under this subdivision (e)(1)(iii) until final resolution of the matter either by the Contracting Officer's determination become final (in which instance the Government shall thereafter have the right to cancel or ignore the markings at any time and the data will no longer be made subject to any disclosure prohibitions), or by final disposition of the matter by court decision if suit is filed.

(2) The time limits in the procedures set forth in paragraph (e)(1) of this clause may be modified in accordance with agency regulations implementing the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) if necessary to respond to a request thereunder.

(f) Omitted or Incorrect Markings

(1) Data delivered to the Government without either the limited rights or restricted rights notice as authorized by paragraph (g) of this clause, or the copyright notice required by paragraph (c) of this clause, shall be deemed to have been furnished with unlimited rights, and the Government assumes no liability for the disclosure, use, or reproduction of such data. However, to the extent the data has not been disclosed without restriction outside the Government, the Recipient may request, within 6 months (or a longer time approved by the



Contracting Officer for good cause shown) after delivery of such data, permission to have notices placed on qualifying data at the Recipient's expense, and the Contracting Officer may agree to do so if the Recipient—

(i) Identifies the data to which the omitted notice is to be applied;

(ii) Demonstrates that the omission of the notice was inadvertent;

(iii) Establishes that the use of the proposed notice is authorized; and

(iv) Acknowledges that the Government has no liability with respect to the disclosure, use, or reproduction of any such data made prior to the addition of the notice or resulting from the omission of the notice.

(2) The Contracting Officer may also:

(i) Permit correction at the Recipient's expense of incorrect notices if the Recipient identifies the data on which correction of the notice is to be made, and demonstrates that the correct notice is authorized; or

(ii) Correct any incorrect notices.

(g) Rights to Protected Data

(1) The Recipient may, with the concurrence of DOE, claim and mark as protected data, any data first produced in the performance of this award that would have been treated as a trade secret if developed at private expense. Any such claimed “protected data” will be clearly marked with the following Protected Rights Notice, and will be treated in accordance with such Notice, subject to the provisions of paragraphs (e) and (f) of this clause.

#### Protected Rights Notice

These protected data were produced under agreement no. [Enter Agreement No.] with the U.S. Department of Energy and may not be published, disseminated, or disclosed to others outside the Government until (Note:) The period of protection of such data is fully negotiable, but cannot exceed the applicable statutorily authorized maximum), unless express written authorization is obtained from the recipient. Upon expiration of the period of protection set forth in this Notice, the Government shall have unlimited rights in this data. This Notice shall be marked on any reproduction of this data, in whole or in part.

(End of notice)

(2) Any such marked Protected Data may be disclosed under obligations of confidentiality for the following purposes:

(a) For evaluation purposes under the restriction that the “Protected Data” be retained in confidence and not be further disclosed; or

(b) To subcontractors or other team members performing work under the Government's (insert name of program or other applicable activity) program of which this award is a part, for information or use in connection with the work performed under their activity, and under the restriction that the Protected Data be retained in confidence and not be further disclosed.

(3) The obligations of confidentiality and restrictions on publication and dissemination shall end for any Protected Data:

(a) At the end of the protected period;

(b) If the data becomes publicly known or available from other sources without a breach of the obligation of confidentiality with respect to the Protected Data;

(c) If the same data is independently developed by someone who did not have access to the Protected Data and such data is made available without obligations of confidentiality; or

(d) If the Recipient disseminates or authorizes another to disseminate such data without obligations of confidentiality.

(4) However, the Recipient agrees that the following types of data are not considered to be protected and shall be provided to the Government when required by this award without any claim that the data are Protected Data. The parties agree that notwithstanding the following lists of types of data, nothing precludes the Government from seeking delivery of additional data in accordance with this award, or from making publicly available additional non-protected data, nor does the following list constitute any admission by the Government that technical data not on the list is Protected Data. (Note: It is expected that this paragraph will specify certain types of mutually agreed upon data that will be available to the public and will not be asserted by the recipient/contractor as limited rights or protected data).

(5) The Government's sole obligation with respect to any protected data shall be as set forth in this paragraph (g).

(h) Protection of Limited Rights Data

When data other than that listed in paragraphs (b)(1)(i), (ii), and (iii) of this clause are specified to be delivered under this agreement and such data qualify as either limited rights data or restricted computer software, the Recipient, if the Recipient desires to continue protection of such data, shall withhold such data and not furnish them to the Government under this

agreement. As a condition to this withholding the Recipient shall identify the data being withheld and furnish form, fit, and function data in lieu thereof.

(i) Subaward/Contract

The Recipient has the responsibility to obtain from its subrecipients/contractors all data and rights therein necessary to fulfill the Recipient's obligations to the Government under this agreement. If a subrecipient/contractor refuses to accept terms affording the Government such rights, the Recipient shall promptly bring such refusal to the attention of the Contracting Officer and not proceed with subaward/contract award without further authorization.

(j) Additional Data Requirements

In addition to the data specified elsewhere in this agreement to be delivered, the Contracting Officer may, at any time during agreement performance or within a period of 3 years after acceptance of all items to be delivered under this agreement, order any data first produced or specifically used in the performance of this agreement. This clause is applicable to all data ordered under this subparagraph. Nothing contained in this subparagraph shall require the Recipient to deliver any data the withholding of which is authorized by this clause or data which are specifically identified in this agreement as not subject to this clause. When data are to be delivered under this subparagraph, the Recipient will be compensated for converting the data into the prescribed form, for reproduction, and for delivery.

(k) The Recipient agrees, except as may be otherwise specified in this agreement for specific data items listed as not subject to this paragraph, that the Contracting Officer or an authorized representative may, up to three years after acceptance of all items to be delivered under this contract, inspect at the Recipient's facility any data withheld pursuant to paragraph (h) of this clause, for purposes of verifying the Recipient's assertion pertaining to the limited rights or restricted rights status of the data or for evaluating work performance. Where the Recipient whose data are to be inspected demonstrates to the Contracting Officer that there would be a possible conflict of interest if the inspection were made by a particular representative, the Contracting Officer shall designate an alternate inspector.

(End of clause)

#### **04. 2 CFR 910, Appendix A of Subpart D, Patent Rights (Small Business Firms and Nonprofit Organizations)**

(a) Definitions

*Invention* means any invention or discovery which is or may be patentable or otherwise protectable under title 35 of the United States Code, or any novel variety of plant which is or may be protected under the Plant Variety Protection Act (7 U.S.C. 2321 *et seq.*).

*Made* when used in relation to any invention means the conception or first actual reduction to practice of such invention.

*Nonprofit organization* is defined in 2 CFR 200.70.

*Practical application* means to manufacture in the case of a composition or product, to practice in the case of a process or method, or to operate in the case of a machine or system; and, in each case, under such conditions as to establish that the invention is being utilized and that its benefits are to the extent permitted by law or Government regulations available to the public on reasonable terms.

*Small business firm* means a small business concern as defined at section 2 of Public Law 85-536 (16 U.S.C. 632) and implementing regulations of the Administrator of the Small Business Administration. For the purpose of this clause, the size standards for small business concerns involved in Government procurement and subcontracting at 13 CFR 121.3 through 121.8 and 13 CFR 121.3 through 121.12, respectively, will be used.

*Subject invention* means any invention of the Recipient conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the performance of work under this award, provided that in the case of a variety of plant, the date of determination (as defined in section 41(d) of the Plant Variety Protection Act, 7 U.S.C. 2401(d) must also occur during the period of award performance.

#### (b) Allocation of Principal Rights

The Recipient may retain the entire right, title, and interest throughout the world to each subject invention subject to the provisions of this Patent Rights clause and 35 U.S.C. 203. With respect to any subject invention in which the Recipient retains title, the Federal Government shall have a non-exclusive, nontransferable, irrevocable, paid-up license to practice or have practiced for or on behalf of the U.S. the subject invention throughout the world.

#### (c) Invention Disclosure, Election of Title and Filing of Patent Applications by Recipient

(1) The Recipient will disclose each subject invention to DOE within two months after the inventor discloses it in writing to Recipient personnel responsible for the administration of patent matters. The disclosure to DOE shall be in the form of a written report and shall identify the award under which the invention was made and the inventor(s). It shall be sufficiently complete in technical detail to convey a clear understanding to the extent known at the time of disclosure, of the nature, purpose, operation, and the physical, chemical, biological or electrical characteristics of the invention. The disclosure shall also identify any publication, on sale or

public use of the invention and whether a manuscript describing the invention has been submitted for publication and, if so, whether it has been accepted for publication at the time of disclosure. In addition, after disclosure to DOE, the Recipient will promptly notify DOE of the acceptance of any manuscript describing the invention for publication or of any on sale or public use planned by the Recipient.

(2) The Recipient will elect in writing whether or not to retain title to any such invention by notifying DOE within two years of disclosure to DOE. However, in any case where publication, on sale, or public use has initiated the one-year statutory period wherein valid patent protection can still be obtained in the U.S., the period for election of title may be shortened by the agency to a date that is no more than 60 days prior to the end of the statutory period.

(3) The Recipient will file its initial patent application on an invention to which it elects to retain title within one year after election of title or, if earlier, prior to the end of any statutory period wherein valid patent protection can be obtained in the U.S. after a publication, on sale, or public use. The Recipient will file patent applications in additional countries or international patent offices within either ten months of the corresponding initial patent application, or six months from the date when permission is granted by the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks to file foreign patent applications when such filing has been prohibited by a Secrecy Order.

(4) Requests for extension of the time for disclosure to DOE, election, and filing under subparagraphs (c)(1), (2), and (3) of this clause may, at the discretion of DOE, be granted.

(d) Conditions When the Government May Obtain Title

The Recipient will convey to DOE, upon written request, title to any subject invention:

(1) If the Recipient fails to disclose or elect the subject invention within the times specified in paragraph (c) of this patent rights clause, or elects not to retain title; provided that DOE may only request title within 60 days after learning of the failure of the Recipient to disclose or elect within the specified times;

(2) In those countries in which the Recipient fails to file patent applications within the times specified in paragraph (c) of this Patent Rights clause; provided, however, that if the Recipient has filed a patent application in a country after the times specified in paragraph (c) of this Patent Rights clause, but prior to its receipt of the written request of DOE, the Recipient shall continue to retain title in that country; or

(3) In any country in which the Recipient decides not to continue the prosecution of any application for, to pay the maintenance fees on, or defend in a reexamination or opposition proceeding on, a patent on a subject invention.

(e) Minimum Rights to Recipient and Protection of the Recipient Right To File

(1) The Recipient will retain a non-exclusive royalty-free license throughout the world in each subject invention to which the Government obtains title, except if the Recipient fails to disclose the subject invention within the times specified in paragraph (c) of this Patent Rights clause. The Recipient's license extends to its domestic subsidiaries and affiliates, if any, within the corporate structure of which the Recipient is a party and includes the right to grant sublicenses of the same scope of the extent the Recipient was legally obligated to do so at the time the award was awarded. The license is transferable only with the approval of DOE except when transferred to the successor of that part of the Recipient's business to which the invention pertains.

(2) The Recipient's domestic license may be revoked or modified by DOE to the extent necessary to achieve expeditious practical application of the subject invention pursuant to an application for an exclusive license submitted in accordance with applicable provisions at 37 CFR part 404 and the agency's licensing regulation, if any. This license will not be revoked in that field of use or the geographical areas in which the Recipient has achieved practical application and continues to make the benefits of the invention reasonably accessible to the public. The license in any foreign country may be revoked or modified at discretion of the funding Federal agency to the extent the Recipient, its licensees, or its domestic subsidiaries or affiliates have failed to achieve practical application in that foreign country.

(3) Before revocation or modification of the license, the funding Federal agency will furnish the Recipient a written notice of its intention to revoke or modify the license, and the Recipient will be allowed thirty days (or such other time as may be authorized by DOE for good cause shown by the Recipient) after the notice to show cause why the license should not be revoked or modified. The Recipient has the right to appeal, in accordance with applicable regulations in 37 CFR part 404 and the agency's licensing regulations, if any, concerning the licensing of Government-owned inventions, any decision concerning the revocation or modification of its license.

(f) Recipient Action To Protect Government's Interest

(1) The Recipient agrees to execute or to have executed and promptly deliver to DOE all instruments necessary to:

(i) Establish or confirm the rights the Government has throughout the world in those subject inventions for which the Recipient retains title; and

(ii) Convey title to DOE when requested under paragraph (d) of this Patent Rights clause, and to enable the government to obtain patent protection throughout the world in that subject invention.

(2) The Recipient agrees to require, by written agreement, its employees, other than clerical and non-technical employees, to disclose promptly in writing to personnel identified as responsible for the administration of patent matters and in a format suggested by the Recipient each subject invention made under this award in order that the Recipient can comply with the disclosure provisions of paragraph (c) of this Patent Rights clause, and to execute all papers necessary to file patent applications on subject inventions and to establish the Government's rights in the subject inventions. The disclosure format should require, as a minimum, the information requested by paragraph (c)(1) of this Patent Rights clause. The Recipient shall instruct such employees through the employee agreements or other suitable educational programs on the importance of reporting inventions in sufficient time to permit the filing of patent applications prior to U.S. or foreign statutory bars.

(3) The Recipient will notify DOE of any decision not to continue prosecution of a patent application, pay maintenance fees, or defend in a reexamination or opposition proceeding on a patent, in any country, not less than 30 days before the expiration of the response period required by the relevant patent office.

(4) The Recipient agrees to include, within the specification of any U.S. patent application and any patent issuing thereon covering a subject invention, the following statement: "This invention was made with Government support under (identify the award) awarded by (identify DOE). The Government has certain rights in this invention."

(g) Subaward/Contract

(1) The Recipient will include this Patent Rights clause, suitably modified to identify the parties, in all subawards/contracts, regardless of tier, for experimental, developmental or research work to be performed by a small business firm or nonprofit organization. The subrecipient/contractor will retain all rights provided for the Recipient in this Patent Rights clause, and the Recipient will not, as part of the consideration for awarding the subcontract, obtain rights in the subcontractors' subject inventions.

(2) The Recipient will include in all other subawards/contracts, regardless of tier, for experimental, developmental or research work, the patent rights clause required by 2 CFR 910.362(c).

(3) In the case of subawards/contracts at any tier, DOE, the Recipient, and the subrecipient/contractor agree that the mutual obligations of the parties created by this clause constitute a contract between the subrecipient/contractor and DOE with respect to those matters covered by the clause.

(h) Reporting on Utilization of Subject Inventions

The Recipient agrees to submit on request periodic reports no more frequently than annually on the utilization of a subject invention or on efforts at obtaining such utilization that are being made by the Recipient or its licensees or assignees. Such reports shall include information regarding the status of development, date of first commercial sale or use, gross royalties received by the Recipient and such other data and information as DOE may reasonably specify. The Recipient also agrees to provide additional reports in connection with any march-in proceeding undertaken by DOE in accordance with paragraph (j) of this Patent Rights clause. As required by 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(5), DOE agrees it will not disclose such information to persons outside the Government without the permission of the Recipient.

(i) Preference for United States Industry.

Notwithstanding any other provision of this Patent Rights clause, the Recipient agrees that neither it nor any assignee will grant to any person the exclusive right to use or sell any subject invention in the U.S. unless such person agrees that any products embodying the subject invention or produced through the use of the subject invention will be manufactured substantially in the U.S. However, in individual cases, the requirement for such an agreement may be waived by DOE upon a showing by the Recipient or its assignee that reasonable but unsuccessful efforts have been made to grant licenses on similar terms to potential licensees that would be likely to manufacture substantially in the U.S. or that under the circumstances domestic manufacture is not commercially feasible.

(j) March-in-Rights

The Recipient agrees that with respect to any subject invention in which it has acquired title, DOE has the right in accordance with procedures at 37 CFR 401.6 and any supplemental regulations of the Agency to require the Recipient, an assignee or exclusive licensee of a subject invention to grant a non-exclusive, partially exclusive, or exclusive license in any field of use to a responsible applicant or applicants, upon terms that are reasonable under the circumstances and if the Recipient, assignee, or exclusive licensee refuses such a request, DOE has the right to grant such a license itself if DOE determines that:

(1) Such action is necessary because the Recipient or assignee has not taken or is not expected to take within a reasonable time, effective steps to achieve practical application of the subject invention in such field of use;

(2) Such action is necessary to alleviate health or safety needs which are not reasonably satisfied by the Recipient, assignee, or their licensees;

(3) Such action is necessary to meet requirements for public use specified by Federal regulations and such requirements are not reasonably satisfied by the Recipient, assignee, or licensee; or



(4) Such action is necessary because the agreement required by paragraph (i) of this Patent Rights clause has not been obtained or waived or because a licensee of the exclusive right to use or sell any subject invention in the U.S. is in breach of such agreement.

(k) Special Provisions for Awards With Nonprofit Organizations

If the Recipient is a nonprofit organization, it agrees that:

(1) Rights to a subject invention in the U.S. may not be assigned without the approval of DOE, except where such assignment is made to an organization which has as one of its primary functions the management of inventions, provided that such assignee will be subject to the same provisions as the Recipient;

(2) The Recipient will share royalties collected on a subject invention with the inventor, including Federal employee co-inventors (when DOE deems it appropriate) when the subject invention is assigned in accordance with 35 U.S.C. 202(e) and 37 CFR 401.10;

(3) The balance of any royalties or income earned by the Recipient with respect to subject inventions, after payment of expenses (including payments to inventors) incidental to the administration of subject inventions, will be utilized for the support of scientific or engineering research or education; and

(4) It will make efforts that are reasonable under the circumstances to attract licensees of subject inventions that are small business firms and that it will give preference to a small business firm if the Recipient determines that the small business firm has a plan or proposal for marketing the invention which, if executed, is equally likely to bring the invention to practical application as any plans or proposals from applicants that are not small business firms; provided that the Recipient is also satisfied that the small business firm has the capability and resources to carry out its plan or proposal. The decision whether to give a preference in any specific case will be at the discretion of the Recipient. However, the Recipient agrees that the Secretary of Commerce may review the Recipient's licensing program and decisions regarding small business applicants, and the Recipient will negotiate changes to its licensing policies, procedures or practices with the Secretary when the Secretary's review discloses that the Recipient could take reasonable steps to implement more effectively the requirements of this paragraph (k)(4).

(l) Communications

All communications required by this Patent Rights clause should be sent to the DOE Patent Counsel address listed in the Award Document.

(m) Electronic Filing

Unless otherwise specified in the award, the information identified in paragraphs (f)(2) and (f)(3) may be electronically filed.

(End of clause)



## Cooperative Agreement - Special Data Statute Research, Development, or Demonstration Domestic Small Business

01. [FAR 52.227-1](#) Authorization and Consent (DEC 2007)  
Alternate I (APR 1984)
02. [FAR 52.227-2](#) Notice and Assistance Regarding Patent and Copyright  
Infringement (DEC 2007)
03. [2 CFR 910](#) Rights in Data – Programs Covered under Special Data  
Appendix A of Subpart D Statutes
04. [2 CFR 910](#) Patent Rights (Small Business Firms and Nonprofit  
Appendix A of Subpart D Organizations)
05. [Attachment 1](#) Determination of Exceptional Circumstances
06. [Attachment 2](#) U.S. Manufacturing Plan

NOTE: In reading these provisions, any reference to “contractor” shall mean “recipient,” and any reference to “contract” or “subcontract” shall mean “award” or “subaward.”

## **01. FAR 52.227-1 Authorization and Consent (DEC 2007) Alternate I (APR 1984)**

(a) The Government authorizes and consents to all use and manufacture of any invention described in and covered by a United States patent in the performance of this contract or any subcontract at any tier.

(b) The Contractor shall include the substance of this clause, including this paragraph (b), in all subcontracts that are expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold. However, omission of this clause from any subcontract, including those at or below the simplified acquisition threshold, does not affect this authorization and consent.

(End of clause)

## **02. FAR 52.227-2 Notice and Assistance Regarding Patent and Copyright Infringement (DEC 2007)**

(a) The Contractor shall report to the Contracting Officer, promptly and in reasonable written detail, each notice or claim of patent or copyright infringement based on the performance of this contract of which the Contractor has knowledge.

(b) In the event of any claim or suit against the Government on account of any alleged patent or copyright infringement arising out of the performance of this contract or out of the use of any supplies furnished or work or services performed under this contract, the Contractor shall furnish to the Government, when requested by the Contracting Officer, all evidence and information in the Contractor's possession pertaining to such claim or suit. Such evidence and information shall be furnished at the expense of the Government except where the Contractor has agreed to indemnify the Government.

(c) The Contractor shall include the substance of this clause, including this paragraph (c), in all subcontracts that are expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold.

(End of clause)

## **03. 2 CFR 910, Appendix A of Subpart D, Rights in Data - Programs Covered Under Special Data Statutes**

(a) Definitions

Computer Data Bases, as used in this clause, means a collection of data in a form capable of, and for the purpose of, being stored in, processed, and operated on by a computer. The term does not include computer software.

Computer software, as used in this clause, means

(i) computer programs which are data comprising a series of instructions, rules, routines, or statements, regardless of the media in which recorded, that allow or cause a computer to perform a specific operation or series of operations and

(ii) data comprising source code listings, design details, algorithms, processes, flow charts, formulae and related material that would enable the computer program to be produced, created or compiled. The term does not include computer data bases.

Data, as used in this clause, means recorded information, regardless of form or the media on which it may be recorded. The term includes technical data and computer software. The term does not include information incidental to administration, such as financial, administrative, cost or pricing or management information.

Form, fit, and function data, as used in this clause, means data relating to items, components, or processes that are sufficient to enable physical and functional interchangeability as well as data identifying source, size, configuration, mating and attachment characteristics, functional characteristics, and performance requirements except that for computer software it means data identifying source, functional characteristics, and performance requirements but specifically excludes the source code, algorithm, process, formulae, and flow charts of the software.

Limited rights data, as used in this clause, means data (other than computer software) developed at private expense that embody trade secrets or are commercial or financial and confidential or privileged.

Restricted computer software, as used in this clause, means computer software developed at private expense and that is a trade secret; is commercial or financial and confidential or privileged; or is published copyrighted computer software; including modifications of such computer software.

Protected data, as used in this clause, means technical data or commercial or financial data first produced in the performance of the award which, if it had been obtained from and first produced by a non-federal party, would be a trade secret or commercial or financial information that is privileged or confidential under the meaning of 5 U.S.C. 552(b)(4) and which data is marked as being protected data by a party to the award.

Protected rights, as used in this clause, mean the rights in protected data set forth in the Protected Rights Notice of paragraph (g) of this clause.

Technical data, as used in this clause, means that data which are of a scientific or technical nature. Technical data does not include computer software, but does include manuals and instructional materials and technical data formatted as a computer data base.

Unlimited rights, as used in this clause, means the right of the Government to use, disclose, reproduce, prepare derivative works, distribute copies to the public, and perform publicly and display publicly, in any manner and for any purpose whatsoever, and to have or permit others to do so.

(b) Allocation of Rights

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this clause regarding copyright, the Government shall have unlimited rights in—

(i) Data specifically identified in this agreement as data to be delivered without restriction;

(ii) Form, fit, and function data delivered under this agreement;

(iii) Data delivered under this agreement (except for restricted computer software) that constitute manuals or instructional and training material for installation, operation, or routine maintenance and repair of items, components, or processes delivered or furnished for use under this agreement; and

(iv) All other data delivered under this agreement unless provided otherwise for protected data in accordance with paragraph (g) of this clause or for limited rights data or restricted computer software in accordance with paragraph (h) of this clause.

(2) The Recipient shall have the right to—

(i) Protect rights in protected data delivered under this agreement in the manner and to the extent provided in paragraph (g) of this clause;

(ii) Withhold from delivery those data which are limited rights data or restricted computer software to the extent provided in paragraph (h) of this clause;

(iii) Substantiate use of, add, or correct protected rights or copyrights notices and to take other appropriate action, in accordance with paragraph (e) of this clause; and

(iv) Establish claim to copyright subsisting in data first produced in the performance of this agreement to the extent provided in paragraph (c)(1) of this clause.

(c) Copyright

(1) Data first produced in the performance of this agreement. Except as otherwise specifically provided in this agreement, the Recipient may establish, without the prior approval of the Contracting Officer, claim to copyright subsisting in any data first produced in the performance of this agreement. If claim to copyright is made, the Recipient shall affix the applicable

copyright notice of 17 U.S.C. 401 or 402 and acknowledgment of Government sponsorship (including agreement number) to the data when such data are delivered to the Government, as well as when the data are published or deposited for registration as a published work in the U.S. Copyright Office. For such copyrighted data, including computer software, the Recipient grants to the Government, and others acting on its behalf, a paid-up nonexclusive, irrevocable, worldwide license to reproduce, prepare derivative works, distribute copies to the public, and perform publicly and display publicly, by or on behalf of the Government, for all such data.

(2) Data not first produced in the performance of this agreement. The Recipient shall not, without prior written permission of the Contracting Officer, incorporate in data delivered under this agreement any data that are not first produced in the performance of this agreement and that contain the copyright notice of 17 U.S.C. 401 or 402, unless the Recipient identifies such data and grants to the Government, or acquires on its behalf, a license of the same scope as set forth in paragraph (c)(1) of this clause; provided, however, that if such data are computer software, the Government shall acquire a copyright license as set forth in paragraph (h)(3) of this clause if included in this agreement or as otherwise may be provided in a collateral agreement incorporated or made a part of this agreement.

(3) Removal of copyright notices. The Government agrees not to remove any copyright notices placed on data pursuant to this paragraph (c), and to include such notices on all reproductions of the data.

#### (d) Release, Publication and Use of Data

(1) The Receipt shall have the right to use, release to others, reproduce, distribute, or publish any data first produced or specifically used by the Recipient in the performance of this contract, except to the extent such data may be subject to the Federal export control or national security laws or regulations, or unless otherwise provided in this paragraph of this clause or expressly set forth in this contract.

(2) The Recipient agrees that to the extent it receives or is given access to data necessary for the performance of this agreement which contain restrictive markings, the Recipient shall treat the data in accordance with such markings unless otherwise specifically authorized in writing by the Contracting Officer.

#### (e) Unauthorized Marking of Data

(1) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this agreement concerning inspection or acceptance, if any data delivered under this agreement are marked with the notices specified in paragraph (g)(2) or (g)(3) of this clause and use of such is not authorized by this clause, or if such data bears any other restrictive or limiting markings not authorized by this agreement, the Contracting Officer may at any time either return the data to the Recipient or cancel or ignore the markings. However, the following procedures shall apply prior to canceling or ignoring the markings.

(i) The Contracting Officer shall make written inquiry to the Recipient affording the Recipient 30 days from receipt of the inquiry to provide written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings;

(ii) If the Recipient fails to respond or fails to provide written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings within the 30-day period (or a longer time not exceeding 90 days approved in writing by the Contracting Officer for good cause shown), the Government shall have the right to cancel or ignore the markings at any time after said period and the data will no longer be made subject to any disclosure prohibitions.

(iii) If the Recipient provides written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings within the period set in subdivision (e)(1)(i) of this clause, the Contracting Officer shall consider such written justification and determine whether or not the markings are to be cancelled or ignored. If the Contracting Officer determines that the markings are authorized, the Recipient shall be so notified in writing. If the Contracting Officer determines, with concurrence of the head of the contracting activity, that the markings are not authorized, the Contracting Officer shall furnish the Recipient a written determination, which determination shall become the final agency decision regarding the appropriateness of the markings unless the Recipient files suit in a court of competent jurisdiction within 90 days of receipt of the Contracting Officer's decision. The Government shall continue to abide by the markings under this subdivision (e)(1)(iii) until final resolution of the matter either by the Contracting Officer's determination become final (in which instance the Government shall thereafter have the right to cancel or ignore the markings at any time and the data will no longer be made subject to any disclosure prohibitions), or by final disposition of the matter by court decision if suit is filed.

(2) The time limits in the procedures set forth in paragraph (e)(1) of this clause may be modified in accordance with agency regulations implementing the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) if necessary to respond to a request thereunder.

(f) Omitted or Incorrect Markings

(1) Data delivered to the Government without either the limited rights or restricted rights notice as authorized by paragraph (g) of this clause, or the copyright notice required by paragraph (c) of this clause, shall be deemed to have been furnished with unlimited rights, and the Government assumes no liability for the disclosure, use, or reproduction of such data. However, to the extent the data has not been disclosed without restriction outside the Government, the Recipient may request, within 6 months (or a longer time approved by the Contracting Officer for good cause shown) after delivery of such data, permission to have notices placed on qualifying data at the Recipient's expense, and the Contracting Officer may agree to do so if the Recipient—

(i) Identifies the data to which the omitted notice is to be applied;



(ii) Demonstrates that the omission of the notice was inadvertent;

(iii) Establishes that the use of the proposed notice is authorized; and

(iv) Acknowledges that the Government has no liability with respect to the disclosure, use, or reproduction of any such data made prior to the addition of the notice or resulting from the omission of the notice.

(2) The Contracting Officer may also:

(i) Permit correction at the Recipient's expense of incorrect notices if the Recipient identifies the data on which correction of the notice is to be made, and demonstrates that the correct notice is authorized; or

(ii) Correct any incorrect notices.

(g) Rights to Protected Data

(1) The Recipient may, with the concurrence of DOE, claim and mark as protected data, any data first produced in the performance of this award that would have been treated as a trade secret if developed at private expense. Any such claimed "protected data" will be clearly marked with the following Protected Rights Notice, and will be treated in accordance with such Notice, subject to the provisions of paragraphs (e) and (f) of this clause.

Protected Rights Notice

These protected data were produced under agreement no. \_\_\_ with the U.S. Department of Energy and may not be published, disseminated, or disclosed to others outside the Government until five (5) years after the date the data were first produced, unless express written authorization is obtained from the recipient. Upon expiration of the period of protection set forth in this Notice, the Government shall have unlimited rights in this data. This Notice shall be marked on any reproduction of this data, in whole or in part.

(End of notice)

(2) Any such marked Protected Data may be disclosed under obligations of confidentiality for the following purposes:

(a) For evaluation purposes under the restriction that the "Protected Data" be retained in confidence and not be further disclosed; or

(b) To subcontractors or other team members performing work under the Government's (insert name of program or other applicable activity) program of which this award is a part, for information or use in connection with the work performed under their activity, and under the restriction that the Protected Data be retained in confidence and not be further disclosed.

(3) The obligations of confidentiality and restrictions on publication and dissemination shall end for any Protected Data:

(a) At the end of the protected period;

(b) If the data becomes publicly known or available from other sources without a breach of the obligation of confidentiality with respect to the Protected Data;

(c) If the same data is independently developed by someone who did not have access to the Protected Data and such data is made available without obligations of confidentiality; or

(d) If the Recipient disseminates or authorizes another to disseminate such data without obligations of confidentiality.

(4) However, the Recipient agrees that the following types of data are not considered to be protected and shall be provided to the Government when required by this award without any claim that the data are Protected Data. The parties agree that notwithstanding the following lists of types of data, nothing precludes the Government from seeking delivery of additional data in accordance with this award, or from making publicly available additional non-protected data, nor does the following list constitute any admission by the Government that technical data not on the list is Protected Data. (Note: It is expected that this paragraph will specify certain types of mutually agreed upon data that will be available to the public and will not be asserted by the recipient/contractor as limited rights or protected data).

(5) The Government's sole obligation with respect to any protected data shall be as set forth in this paragraph (g).

(h) Protection of Limited Rights Data

When data other than that listed in paragraphs (b)(1)(i), (ii), and (iii) of this clause are specified to be delivered under this agreement and such data qualify as either limited rights data or restricted computer software, the Recipient, if the Recipient desires to continue protection of such data, shall withhold such data and not furnish them to the Government under this agreement. As a condition to this withholding the Recipient shall identify the data being withheld and furnish form, fit, and function data in lieu thereof.

(i) Subaward/Contract

The Recipient has the responsibility to obtain from its subrecipients/contractors all data and rights therein necessary to fulfill the Recipient's obligations to the Government under this agreement. If a subrecipient/contractor refuses to accept terms affording the Government such rights, the Recipient shall promptly bring such refusal to the attention of the Contracting Officer and not proceed with subaward/contract award without further authorization.

(j) Additional Data Requirements

In addition to the data specified elsewhere in this agreement to be delivered, the Contracting Officer may, at any time during agreement performance or within a period of 3 years after acceptance of all items to be delivered under this agreement, order any data first produced or specifically used in the performance of this agreement. This clause is applicable to all data ordered under this subparagraph. Nothing contained in this subparagraph shall require the Recipient to deliver any data the withholding of which is authorized by this clause or data which are specifically identified in this agreement as not subject to this clause. When data are to be delivered under this subparagraph, the Recipient will be compensated for converting the data into the prescribed form, for reproduction, and for delivery.

(k) The Recipient agrees, except as may be otherwise specified in this agreement for specific data items listed as not subject to this paragraph, that the Contracting Officer or an authorized representative may, up to three years after acceptance of all items to be delivered under this contract, inspect at the Recipient's facility any data withheld pursuant to paragraph (h) of this clause, for purposes of verifying the Recipient's assertion pertaining to the limited rights or restricted rights status of the data or for evaluating work performance. Where the Recipient whose data are to be inspected demonstrates to the Contracting Officer that there would be a possible conflict of interest if the inspection were made by a particular representative, the Contracting Officer shall designate an alternate inspector.

(End of clause)

**04. 2 CFR 910, Appendix A of Subpart D, Patent Rights (Small Business Firms and Nonprofit Organizations)(as modified by the EERE/ARPA-E DEC)**

(a) Definitions

*Invention* means any invention or discovery which is or may be patentable or otherwise protectable under title 35 of the United States Code, or any novel variety of plant which is or may be protected under the Plant Variety Protection Act (7 U.S.C. 2321 *et seq.*).

*Made* when used in relation to any invention means the conception or first actual reduction to practice of such invention.

*Nonprofit organization* is defined in 2 CFR 200.70.

*Practical application* means to manufacture in the case of a composition or product, to practice in the case of a process or method, or to operate in the case of a machine or system; and, in each case, under such conditions as to establish that the invention is being utilized and that its benefits are to the extent permitted by law or Government regulations available to the public on reasonable terms.

*Small business firm* means a small business concern as defined at section 2 of Public Law 85-536 (16 U.S.C. 632) and implementing regulations of the Administrator of the Small Business Administration. For the purpose of this clause, the size standards for small business concerns involved in Government procurement and subcontracting at 13 CFR 121.3 through 121.8 and 13 CFR 121.3 through 121.12, respectively, will be used.

*Subject invention* means any invention of the Recipient conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the performance of work under this award, provided that in the case of a variety of plant, the date of determination (as defined in section 41(d) of the Plant Variety Protection Act, 7 U.S.C. 2401(d) must also occur during the period of award performance.

(b) Allocation of Principal Rights

The Recipient may retain the entire right, title, and interest throughout the world to each subject invention subject to the provisions of this Patent Rights clause and 35 U.S.C. 203. With respect to any subject invention in which the Recipient retains title, the Federal Government shall have a non-exclusive, nontransferable, irrevocable, paid-up license to practice or have practiced for or on behalf of the U.S. the subject invention throughout the world.

(c) Invention Disclosure, Election of Title and Filing of Patent Applications by Recipient

(1) The Recipient will disclose each subject invention to DOE within two months after the inventor discloses it in writing to Recipient personnel responsible for the administration of patent matters. The disclosure to DOE shall be in the form of a written report and shall identify the award under which the invention was made and the inventor(s). It shall be sufficiently complete in technical detail to convey a clear understanding to the extent known at the time of disclosure, of the nature, purpose, operation, and the physical, chemical, biological or electrical characteristics of the invention. The disclosure shall also identify any publication, on sale or public use of the invention and whether a manuscript describing the invention has been submitted for publication and, if so, whether it has been accepted for publication at the time of disclosure. In addition, after disclosure to DOE, the Recipient will promptly notify DOE of the acceptance of any manuscript describing the invention for publication or of any on sale or public use planned by the Recipient.

(2) The Recipient will elect in writing whether or not to retain title to any such invention by notifying DOE within two years of disclosure to DOE. However, in any case where publication, on sale, or public use has initiated the one-year statutory period wherein valid patent protection can still be obtained in the U.S., the period for election of title may be shortened by the agency to a date that is no more than 60 days prior to the end of the statutory period.

(3) The Recipient will file its initial patent application on an invention to which it elects to retain title within one year after election of title or, if earlier, prior to the end of any statutory period wherein valid patent protection can be obtained in the U.S. after a publication, on sale, or public use. The Recipient will file patent applications in additional countries or international

patent offices within either ten months of the corresponding initial patent application, or six months from the date when permission is granted by the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks to file foreign patent applications when such filing has been prohibited by a Secrecy Order.

(4) Requests for extension of the time for disclosure to DOE, election, and filing under subparagraphs (c)(1), (2), and (3) of this clause may, at the discretion of DOE, be granted.

(d) Conditions When the Government May Obtain Title

The Recipient will convey to DOE, upon written request, title to any subject invention:

(1) If the Recipient fails to disclose or elect the subject invention within the times specified in paragraph (c) of this patent rights clause, or elects not to retain title; provided that DOE may only request title within 60 days after learning of the failure of the Recipient to disclose or elect within the specified times;

(2) In those countries in which the Recipient fails to file patent applications within the times specified in paragraph (c) of this Patent Rights clause; provided, however, that if the Recipient has filed a patent application in a country after the times specified in paragraph (c) of this Patent Rights clause, but prior to its receipt of the written request of DOE, the Recipient shall continue to retain title in that country; or

(3) In any country in which the Recipient decides not to continue the prosecution of any application for, to pay the maintenance fees on, or defend in a reexamination or opposition proceeding on, a patent on a subject invention.

(4) Upon breach of paragraph (h) or paragraph (n) on this Patent Rights clause.

(e) Minimum Rights to Recipient and Protection of the Recipient Right To File

(1) The Recipient will retain a non-exclusive royalty-free license throughout the world in each subject invention to which the Government obtains title, except if the Recipient fails to disclose the subject invention within the times specified in paragraph (c) of this Patent Rights clause or breaches paragraph (h) or paragraph (n) of this Patent Rights clause. The Recipient's license extends to its domestic subsidiaries and affiliates, if any, within the corporate structure of which the Recipient is a party and includes the right to grant sublicenses of the same scope of the extent the Recipient was legally obligated to do so at the time the award was awarded. The license is transferable only with the approval of DOE except when transferred to the successor of that part of the Recipient's business to which the invention pertains.

(2) The Recipient's domestic license may be revoked or modified by DOE to the extent necessary to achieve expeditious practical application of the subject invention pursuant to an application for an exclusive license submitted in accordance with applicable provisions at 37

CFR part 404 and the agency's licensing regulation, if any. This license will not be revoked in that field of use or the geographical areas in which the Recipient has achieved practical application and continues to make the benefits of the invention reasonably accessible to the public. The license in any foreign country may be revoked or modified at discretion of the funding Federal agency to the extent the Recipient, its licensees, or its domestic subsidiaries or affiliates have failed to achieve practical application in that foreign country.

(3) Before revocation or modification of the license, the funding Federal agency will furnish the Recipient a written notice of its intention to revoke or modify the license, and the Recipient will be allowed thirty days (or such other time as may be authorized by DOE for good cause shown by the Recipient) after the notice to show cause why the license should not be revoked or modified. The Recipient has the right to appeal, in accordance with applicable regulations in 37 CFR part 404 and the agency's licensing regulations, if any, concerning the licensing of Government-owned inventions, any decision concerning the revocation or modification of its license.

(f) Recipient Action To Protect Government's Interest

(1) The Recipient agrees to execute or to have executed and promptly deliver to DOE all instruments necessary to:

(i) Establish or confirm the rights the Government has throughout the world in those subject inventions for which the Recipient retains title; and

(ii) Convey title to DOE when requested under paragraph (d) of this Patent Rights clause, and to enable the government to obtain patent protection throughout the world in that subject invention.

(2) The Recipient agrees to require, by written agreement, its employees, other than clerical and non-technical employees, to disclose promptly in writing to personnel identified as responsible for the administration of patent matters and in a format suggested by the Recipient each subject invention made under this award in order that the Recipient can comply with the disclosure provisions of paragraph (c) of this Patent Rights clause, and to execute all papers necessary to file patent applications on subject inventions and to establish the Government's rights in the subject inventions. The disclosure format should require, as a minimum, the information requested by paragraph (c)(1) of this Patent Rights clause. The Recipient shall instruct such employees through the employee agreements or other suitable educational programs on the importance of reporting inventions in sufficient time to permit the filing of patent applications prior to U.S. or foreign statutory bars.

(3) The Recipient will notify DOE of any decision not to continue prosecution of a patent application, pay maintenance fees, or defend in a reexamination or opposition proceeding on a patent, in any country, not less than 30 days before the expiration of the response period required by the relevant patent office.

(4) The Recipient agrees to include, within the specification of any U.S. patent application and any patent issuing thereon covering a subject invention, the following statement: “This invention was made with Government support under (identify the award) awarded by (identify DOE). The Government has certain rights in this invention.”

(g) Subaward/Contract

(1) The Recipient will include this Patent Rights clause, suitably modified to identify the parties, in all subawards/contracts, regardless of tier, for experimental, developmental or research work to be performed by a small business firm or nonprofit organization. The subrecipient/contractor will retain all rights provided for the Recipient in this Patent Rights clause, and the Recipient will not, as part of the consideration for awarding the subcontract, obtain rights in the subcontractors' subject inventions.

(2) The Recipient will include in all other subawards/contracts, regardless of tier, for experimental, developmental or research work, the patent rights clause required by 2 CFR 910.362(c).

(3) In the case of subawards/contracts at any tier, DOE, the Recipient, and the subrecipient/contractor agree that the mutual obligations of the parties created by this clause constitute a contract between the subrecipient/contractor and DOE with respect to those matters covered by the clause.

(h) Reporting on Utilization of Subject Inventions

The Recipient agrees to submit on request periodic reports no more frequently than annually on the utilization of a subject invention or on efforts at obtaining such utilization that are being made by the Recipient or its licensees or assignees. Such reports shall include information regarding the status of development, date of first commercial sale or use, gross royalties received by the Recipient, products that embody or are made through the use of the subject invention, manufacturing locations of such products and such other data and information as DOE may reasonably specify. The Recipient also agrees to provide additional reports in connection with any march-in proceeding undertaken by DOE in accordance with paragraph (j) of this Patent Rights clause. As required by 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(5), DOE agrees it will not disclose such information to persons outside the Government without the permission of the Recipient.

(i) Preference for United States Industry.

Notwithstanding any other provision of this Patent Rights clause, the Recipient agrees that neither it nor any assignee will grant to any person the exclusive right to use or sell any subject invention in the U.S. unless such person agrees that any products embodying the subject invention or produced through the use of the subject invention will be manufactured substantially in the U.S. However, in individual cases, the requirement for such an agreement

may be waived by DOE upon a showing by the Recipient or its assignee that reasonable but unsuccessful efforts have been made to grant licenses on similar terms to potential licensees that would be likely to manufacture substantially in the U.S. or that under the circumstances domestic manufacture is not commercially feasible.

(j) March-in-Rights

The Recipient agrees that with respect to any subject invention in which it has acquired title, DOE has the right in accordance with procedures at 37 CFR 401.6 and any supplemental regulations of the Agency to require the Recipient, an assignee or exclusive licensee of a subject invention to grant a non-exclusive, partially exclusive, or exclusive license in any field of use to a responsible applicant or applicants, upon terms that are reasonable under the circumstances and if the Recipient, assignee, or exclusive licensee refuses such a request, DOE has the right to grant such a license itself if DOE determines that:

(1) Such action is necessary because the Recipient or assignee has not taken or is not expected to take within a reasonable time, effective steps to achieve practical application of the subject invention in such field of use;

(2) Such action is necessary to alleviate health or safety needs which are not reasonably satisfied by the Recipient, assignee, or their licensees;

(3) Such action is necessary to meet requirements for public use specified by Federal regulations and such requirements are not reasonably satisfied by the Recipient, assignee, or licensee; or

(4) Such action is necessary because the agreement required by paragraph (i) of this Patent Rights clause has not been obtained or waived or because a licensee of the exclusive right to use or sell any subject invention in the U.S. is in breach of such agreement.

(k) Special Provisions for Awards With Nonprofit Organizations

If the Recipient is a nonprofit organization, it agrees that:

(1) Rights to a subject invention in the U.S. may not be assigned without the approval of DOE, except where such assignment is made to an organization which has as one of its primary functions the management of inventions, provided that such assignee will be subject to the same provisions as the Recipient;

(2) The Recipient will share royalties collected on a subject invention with the inventor, including Federal employee co-inventors (when DOE deems it appropriate) when the subject invention is assigned in accordance with 35 U.S.C. 202(e) and 37 CFR 401.10;



(3) The balance of any royalties or income earned by the Recipient with respect to subject inventions, after payment of expenses (including payments to inventors) incidental to the administration of subject inventions, will be utilized for the support of scientific or engineering research or education; and

(4) It will make efforts that are reasonable under the circumstances to attract licensees of subject inventions that are small business firms and that it will give preference to a small business firm if the Recipient determines that the small business firm has a plan or proposal for marketing the invention which, if executed, is equally likely to bring the invention to practical application as any plans or proposals from applicants that are not small business firms; provided that the Recipient is also satisfied that the small business firm has the capability and resources to carry out its plan or proposal. The decision whether to give a preference in any specific case will be at the discretion of the Recipient. However, the Recipient agrees that the Secretary of Commerce may review the Recipient's licensing program and decisions regarding small business applicants, and the Recipient will negotiate changes to its licensing policies, procedures or practices with the Secretary when the Secretary's review discloses that the Recipient could take reasonable steps to implement more effectively the requirements of this paragraph (k)(4).

(l) Communications

All communications required by this Patent Rights clause should be sent to the DOE Patent Counsel address listed in the Award Document.

(m) Electronic Filing

Unless otherwise specified in the award, the information identified in paragraphs (f)(2) and (f)(3) may be electronically filed.

(n) U.S. Manufacturing Plan

(1) The Recipient agrees that a purpose of this contract is to provide substantial benefit to the U.S. economy. In exchange for the benefits and rights received under this contract, the Recipient agrees to comply with the U.S. Manufacturing Plan that is attached to these IP provisions as Attachment 2 and was submitted as part of its proposal upon which this contract is based, *including, but not limited to, the following commitments:*

*[recite any specific and enforceable commitments from the plan].*

(2) The requirement and enforcement of the U.S. Manufacturing Plan is in accordance with the Determination of Exceptional Circumstances (DEC) executed by DOE on September 11, 2013. A copy of the DEC is attached to these IP provisions as Attachment 1. As set forth in 37 CFR 401.4, the Recipient has the right to appeal the imposition of the DEC within 30 working data from the time it receives a copy of it.

(End of clause)

Attachment 1: The Determination of Exceptional Circumstances

Attachment 2: U.S. Manufacturing Plan



## Department of Energy

Washington, DC 20585

September 9, 2013

### **DETERMINATION OF EXCEPTIONAL CIRCUMSTANCES UNDER THE BAYH-DOLE ACT FOR ENERGY EFFICIENCY, RENEWABLE ENERGY, AND ADVANCED ENERGY TECHNOLOGIES**

Under the Bayh-Dole Act, 35 U.S.C. §§ 200-12 ("Bayh-Dole"), Federal agencies may determine that "exceptional circumstances" exist such that a modification in the patent rights disposition provided under the Act would better promote its objectives. The Department of Energy ("DOE") has determined that exceptional circumstances exist for disposition of patent rights arising under research, development, demonstration, and market transformation projects involving energy efficiency, renewable energy, and advanced energy technologies as described in Title IX, Subtitles A through D of the Energy Policy Act of 2005 (42 U.S.C. 16191 through 16256), and Title V, Section 5012 of the America COMPETES Act of 2007 (as amended by Title IX, Section 904 of the America COMPETES Act of 2010)(42 U.S.C. 16538) to better promote U.S. manufacturing.

These technologies are (1) energy efficiency, storage, integration, and related technologies, including (as examples only) for buildings, transportation, and energy-intensive industries; (2) renewable energy technologies, including (as examples only) for wind power, water power, photovoltaic, solar thermal, geothermal power, hydrogen power, biomass power, biofuel power, and fuel cells; and (3) advanced energy technologies, including transformational, breakthrough energy technologies in a variety of technical areas that have the potential to lead to revolutionary advances in the marketplace, including (as examples only) projects for advanced components and materials.

To better meet the objectives of Bayh-Dole, which include the goal of promoting commercialization of inventions by United States industry and labor, DOE proposes the use of U.S. Manufacturing Plans in funding agreements that support research, development, and demonstration of energy efficiency, renewable energy, and advanced energy technologies. The U.S. Manufacturing Plans consist of commitments proposed by applicants in response to funding opportunity announcements (FOAs), would be used by DOE during its evaluation and selection process, and would be formally incorporated into funding agreements following award negotiations. DOE may require the submission of U.S. Manufacturing Plans by all types of applicants, including large businesses, small businesses, and non-profit organizations. Once incorporated into a funding agreement, U.S. Manufacturing Plans may be enforced, among other possible remedies, through forfeiture of rights to subject inventions. Except for the U.S.



Manufacturing Plans and the enforcement mechanism, the patent rights granted to certain funding recipients under Bayh-Dole remain the same. In accordance with 37 C.F.R. 401.3(e), DOE makes the following determination of exceptional circumstances, along with the supporting statement of facts and analysis.

I. *The patent rights provided by Bayh-Dole may be modified to better promote the objectives of the Act when an agency determines that “exceptional circumstances” exist.*

a. *Bayh-Dole provides a standard set of patent rights to recipients of federal funds under a funding agreement.*

Rights to inventions that contractors, subcontractors, as well as recipients and sub-recipients of grants and cooperative agreements (“funding recipients”) conceive or first actually reduce to practice in performance of work under a funding agreement (“subject inventions”) are governed by Bayh-Dole and the federal regulations that implement Bayh-Dole.<sup>1</sup> A “funding agreement” is “any contract, grant, or cooperative agreement entered into by any Federal agency . . . and any contractor for the performance of experimental, developmental, or research work funded in whole or in part by the Federal Government.”<sup>2</sup>

Bayh-Dole allows certain non-profit organizations and domestic small businesses who are recipients of a funding agreement (“Bayh-Dole entities”) to elect title to their subject inventions subject to limited government rights, and further provides that the recipients must comply with certain disclosure, patent prosecution, and other requirements.<sup>3</sup> In order to comply with Bayh-Dole, Federal agencies are required to use a standard patent rights clause for funding agreements with Bayh-Dole entities.<sup>4</sup>

b. *Standard patent rights under Bayh-Dole may be modified when “exceptional circumstances” exist and a modification would better promote the Act’s objectives.*

A Federal agency may restrict, eliminate, or otherwise modify rights provided to Bayh-Dole entities and implemented through the standard patent rights clause in “exceptional circumstances” when the Federal agency determines that a restriction, elimination, or modification of the rights and requirements provided by Bayh-Dole would better promote the

---

<sup>1</sup> 35 U.S.C. §§ 200-212; 37 C.F.R. Part 401.

<sup>2</sup> 35 U.S.C. § 201 (b).

<sup>3</sup> Bayh-Dole does not provide large business recipients the right to elect title to subject inventions under DOE statutory authorities. 42 U.S.C. §§ 2182 and 5908. Bayh-Dole also does not apply to Technology Investment Agreements, under DOE’s Other Transactions Authority. 42 U.S.C. § 7256.

<sup>4</sup> 37 C.F.R. § 401.3(a).

Act's objectives.<sup>5</sup> The degree or scope of the modification should only be to the extent necessary to address the exceptional circumstances.<sup>6</sup>

- II. *Promoting domestic manufacture of products derived from federally-funded research is a primary objective of Bayh-Dole.*

A fundamental objective of Bayh-Dole is to promote U.S. manufacturing by encouraging the domestic manufacture of products derived from federally-funded research. Among the listed objectives of Bayh-Dole is "to promote the commercialization and public availability of inventions made in the United States by United States industry and labor."<sup>7</sup>

Bayh-Dole was enacted in 1980, in part, to address a growing concern regarding the ability of U.S. manufacturing to compete in an increasingly globalized marketplace. The House Report filed by the Judiciary Committee when Bayh-Dole was presented to Congress identified the need for legislation to address the "failure of American industry to keep pace with the increased productivity of foreign competitors."<sup>8</sup> Bayh-Dole's passage was spurred in part by the President's Advisory Committee on Industrial Innovation, convened in 1978 to study the possibilities for encouraging increased productivity in the United States. Chief among the recommendations of the committee was a legislative proposal to promote industrial innovation through the commercial manufacture of federally-funded technologies. The legislative proposal led to Bayh-Dole.<sup>9</sup>

- III. *DOE has determined that exceptional circumstances exist because Bayh-Dole's objective of promoting U.S. manufacturing of federally-funded research is not fully being met with respect to energy efficiency, renewable energy, and advanced energy technologies.*

The current state of domestic manufacturing for energy efficiency, renewable energy manufacturing, and advanced energy technologies makes clear that the objective of promoting U.S. manufacture of U.S. inventions has not been adequately achieved.

---

<sup>5</sup> 35 U.S.C. § 202(a)(ii); 37 C.F.R. § 401.3(a).

<sup>6</sup> 37 C.F.R. § 401.3(b).

<sup>7</sup> 35 U.S.C. § 200.

<sup>8</sup> H.R. REP. 96-1307, 1, 1980 U.S.C.C.A.N. 6460, 6460 ("Need for the Legislation: Many analysts of the U.S. economy have warned that the roots of the current recession lie in a longer term economic malaise which arises out of a failure of American industry to keep pace with the increased productivity of foreign competitors.").

<sup>9</sup> *Id.* at 6462. See U.S. DEPT. OF COMMERCE, ADVISORY COMMITTEE ON INDUSTRIAL INNOVATION: FINAL REPORT (Sept. 1979).

- a. *The U.S. has made significant investments in energy efficiency, renewable energy, and advanced energy technologies through DOE.*

The United States is a leader in the research and development of energy efficiency, renewable energy, and advanced energy technologies. America's leadership in research and development has been maintained in part due to DOE's significant and strategic investments in these types of technologies. The investments are made primarily through two DOE organizations: (1) the Office of Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy (EERE) and (2) the Advanced Research Projects Agency-Energy (ARPA-E).

EERE works to strengthen the United States' energy security, environmental quality, and economic vitality in public-private partnerships. It supports this goal through (1) enhancing energy efficiency and productivity; and (2) bringing clean, reliable and affordable energy technologies to the marketplace. EERE partners with business, industry, universities, national laboratories, consumers, federal energy managers, inventors, states, and tribes to research, develop, and advance energy efficiency and renewable energy technologies. EERE funds R&D in programs that include building technologies, advanced manufacturing, vehicle technologies, weatherization technologies, bio-energy technologies, fuel cell technologies, geothermal technologies, solar energy technologies, and wind and water power technologies. EERE programs are focused on developing next-generation energy efficiency and renewable energy technologies and lowering the associated cost so that these technologies are broadly adopted and used across the United States. EERE has invested \$28.8 billion in energy efficiency and renewable energy technologies over the last ten years.

ARPA-E is dedicated to advancing energy technologies that have the potential to be transformational in the marketplace. ARPA-E works to identify high-risk, high-reward technical areas of interest to advance the agency's three mission areas: to enhance our nation's economic security, enhance our nation's energy security, and reduce energy-related emissions. ARPA-E enters into funding agreements with businesses, non-profit research organizations, universities, and national laboratories to research, develop and advance energy technologies that industry and other government programs are not likely to support because of technical and financial uncertainty.

In its first four years of operation, ARPA-E has invested more than \$777 million in advanced energy technologies, including approximately 285 research and development projects selected under 14 targeted FOAs and two open FOAs. In addition, ARPA-E has undertaken robust technology transfer and outreach activities to maximize the return on taxpayer investment through ARPA-E-funded technologies meeting their full commercial potential. Critical success in ARPA-E projects has spurred millions of dollars in follow-on private-sector funding, and a number of ARPA-E awardees have formed start-up companies as a result of ARPA-E funding.

- b. *Despite DOE's significant investment in energy efficiency, renewable energy, and advanced energy technologies research, development, and deployment, U.S. clean energy manufacturing lags behind other nations.*

Notwithstanding its leadership in research, development, and deployment of energy efficiency, renewable energy, and advanced energy technologies, the U.S. lags behind other nations in the manufacturing of those technologies. For example, China has 711 commissioned renewable energy manufacturing plants, five times as many as the U.S.<sup>10</sup> China has an additional 13 partially commissioned plants and 122 under construction, for a total of 60% of all renewable energy plants on record.<sup>11</sup> The U.S. has only an additional 5 partially commissioned plants and 18 under construction.<sup>12</sup> More particularly, in the field of solar technologies, China currently has 523 fully commissioned solar manufacturing plants (44% of world total) and Germany has 96 (8% of world total), while the US has 87 (7% of world total).<sup>13</sup> In the area of wind power technology, China has 109 wind manufacturing plants, or 41% of the world total.<sup>14</sup> India has 34 wind manufacturing plants, or 14% of the world's total.<sup>15</sup> The U.S. has only 23 plants, or 1.0% of the world total.<sup>16</sup> According to consulting firm MAKE Consulting, U.S. manufacturing capacity to produce wind turbine components is insufficient, in many cases, even to keep up with U.S. demand, much less demand in foreign markets.<sup>17</sup>

- c. *Congress has expressly recognized the need to improve the level of U.S. manufacturing from DOE's investments in energy efficiency, renewable energy, and advanced energy technologies.*

In the accompanying House Report for the 2013 Energy and Water Appropriations Bill, the Committee on Appropriations identified the specific need for DOE to take a leadership role in improving U.S. manufacturing and domestic intellectual property retention:

The Department's research and development efforts yield several thousand patents and licenses each year, and taxpayers expect their support to result in commercialized technologies that benefit both American consumers and American industry. This expectation is not met when intellectual property that

---

<sup>10</sup> *Industry Intelligence*, BLOOMBERG NEW ENERGY FINANCE, <http://www.bnef.com/> (last visited Feb. 12, 2013).

<sup>11</sup> *Id.*

<sup>12</sup> *Id.*

<sup>13</sup> Bloomberg New Energy Finance, *supra* note 10.

<sup>14</sup> *Id.*

<sup>15</sup> *Id.*

<sup>16</sup> *Id.*

<sup>17</sup> Whitehouse.gov "Promoting Clean, Renewable Energy: Investments in Wind and Solar" 2010 <http://www.whitehouse.gov/recovery/innovations/clean-renewable-energy#19>

was developed with public funding is commercialized only by foreign manufacturers. The Committee believes that intellectual property policies offer substantial opportunities to encourage domestic manufacturing without obstructing commercial efficiency, eroding the value of intellectual property, or under-mining free trade. The technology transfer efforts of the Department should support domestic manufacturing wherever possible and the Department must take proactive steps to ensure taxpayer-funded research and development result in domestic jobs and revenues.<sup>18</sup>

The Committee requested that DOE examine what authorities are available to control intellectual property, specifically including the Bayh-Dole Act.<sup>19</sup>

Congress has also emphasized the importance of U.S. manufacturing through the authorizing statute for ARPA-E. Specifically, Congress established ARPA-E through the passage of the America Competes Act of 2007 and, among other things, charged ARPA-E with accelerating “the research and development of manufacturing processes for novel energy technologies.”<sup>20</sup> As a reflection of Congress’s focus on U.S. manufacturing, ARPA-E responsibility regarding research and development of manufacturing was modified in the America Competes Reauthorization Act of 2010 to state the following: “research and development of advanced manufacturing process and technologies for the *domestic manufacturing* of novel energy technologies.” (emphasis added)<sup>21</sup>

It is critical that energy efficiency, renewable energy, and advanced energy technologies funded by DOE support manufacturing in the United States, particularly in view of the necessity of creating and maintaining jobs, including manufacturing jobs, in the U.S. The objectives of DOE’s research and development programs are to decrease the dependence of the U.S. on foreign energy supplies, enhance U.S. economic and energy security, increase the export of renewable generation equipment from the U.S., and ensure that the United States maintains a technological lead in developing and deploying next-generation energy technologies.<sup>22</sup> A strong and vibrant domestic manufacturing base is needed for these objectives to be met. If the U.S. cannot maintain a manufacturing base for energy efficiency, renewable energy, and advanced energy technologies then it will remain dependent on foreign energy supplies and fail to achieve economic, energy, and national security.

---

<sup>18</sup> H.R. Rep. No. 112-462 (May 2, 2012) at 81.

<sup>19</sup> *Id.* at 82.

<sup>20</sup> America COMPETES Act, Pub. L. 110-69, § 5012 (2007).

<sup>21</sup> America COMPETES Reauthorization Act of 2010, Pub. L. 111-358, § 904 (2010).

<sup>22</sup> 42 U.S.C. § 16231(a).



IV. *EERE and ARPA-E will implement U.S. Manufacturing Plans to further promote the U.S. manufacture of inventions resulting from Federally-funded research.*

a. *U.S. Manufacturing Plans may be required under a FOA and may be used as a basis for selection.*

Depending on the nature of the FOA, EERE and ARPA-E may require a U.S. Manufacturing Plan from each applicant of the FOA as part of its application. The U.S. Manufacturing Plan will represent the applicant's measurable commitment to support U.S. manufacturing of the technologies related to its EERE or ARPA-E funding agreement. The Plans shall apply equally to all types of applicants, including large businesses, small businesses, and non-profit organizations. Once incorporated into a funding agreement, the U.S. Manufacturing Plan will provide that it may be enforced, among other possible remedies, through forfeiture of rights to subject inventions. Except for the U.S. Manufacturing Plan proposed by the applicant and the enforcement mechanism, the patent rights of funding recipients granted by Bayh-Dole remain the same.

The nature and specificity of the applicants' U.S. Manufacturing Plans will vary based on the FOA and the program issuing the FOA. A higher level of specificity may be required in the U.S. Manufacturing Plans for technologies at higher technology readiness levels due to the greater certainty surrounding the commercialization of these technologies. U.S. Manufacturing Plans submitted in response to FOAs targeting technologies at high technology readiness levels or demonstration activities should include specific commitments to manufacturing in the U.S. For example, the U.S. Manufacturing Plan may specify products related to the funding agreement that will be manufactured in the U.S. or may identify investments in U.S. facilities to support product manufacture. U.S. Manufacturing Plans submitted in response to FOAs directed at technologies at lower technology readiness levels may have fewer specific manufacturing details and may focus more on licensing and other strategies to promote U.S. manufacturing.

The weight given to the U.S. Manufacturing Plans during the review and selection process likely will also vary based on the particular FOA and may be part of the evaluation or merit criteria. For example, the U.S. Manufacturing Plans may constitute 30% of the overall merit review score of the proposals. Alternatively, the U.S. Manufacturing Plans may be treated as a qualitative program policy factor, thereby allowing the selecting official to give preference to applications based on the U.S. Manufacturing Plans. FOAs directed to technologies at high technology readiness levels or demonstration type activities may require greater consideration of applicants' U.S. Manufacturing Plans.

Following selection and award negotiations, the U.S. Manufacturing Plan will be incorporated into the funding agreement. The funding agreement may further require that the

funding recipient submit annual reports to DOE (including after expiration of the funding period) to demonstrate compliance with the U.S. Manufacturing Plan.

The funding agreement terms and conditions will further provide for the remedies upon breach of the U.S. Manufacturing Plan. Individual FOAs, for example, may specify remedies such as repayment (including repayment with interest) of the DOE funding received under the funding agreement. Remedies may also include a loss of all rights to subject inventions by the funding recipient, including title reverting back to DOE if the funding recipient had title to the subject inventions.

*b. The standard patent rights clause will be modified to allow U.S. Manufacturing Plans to be enforceable and to serve as a basis for selection.*

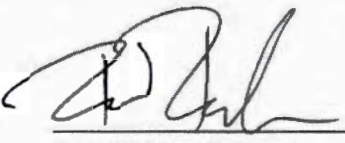
To the extent that a U.S. Manufacturing Plan is connected to subject inventions or that the remedy for a breach of a U.S. Manufacturing Plan is connected to subject inventions (e.g., title reverts back to DOE), the standard patent rights clause for Bayh-Dole entities will be modified accordingly. The modification would be necessary to implement and enforce the U.S. Manufacturing Plan proposed by the Bayh-Dole entity and was in part the purpose for selecting the Bayh-Dole entity's proposal.

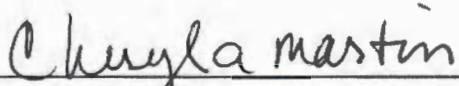
The funding recipient, including any Bayh-Dole entity, may request a waiver or modification of the U.S. Manufacturing Plan from DOE upon a satisfactory showing that the original U.S. Manufacturing Plan is no longer economically feasible and where the funding recipient can demonstrate an alternate net benefit to the U.S. economy notwithstanding the requested waiver or modification.

V. *Conclusion*

EERE and ARPA-E have determined that exceptional circumstances exist for energy efficiency, renewable energy, and advanced energy technologies. The U.S. Manufacturing Plan strategy described herein would better promote the objectives of Bayh-Dole by providing stronger support to U.S. manufacturing. Moreover, DOE is not imposing additional restrictions, requirements, or modifications from the standard patent rights clause beyond what is necessary to address the exceptional circumstances.

Any Bayh-Dole entity affected by this determination of exceptional circumstances has the right, and will be informed of that right, to appeal it.<sup>23</sup>

Approved:  \_\_\_\_\_ Date: 09/05/13  
DAVID DANIELSON  
ASSISTANT SECRETARY  
FOR ENERGY EFFICIENCY AND RENEWABLE ENERGY

Approved:  \_\_\_\_\_ Date: 9/9/13  
CHERYL MARTIN  
DEPUTY DIRECTOR  
FOR ADVANCED RESEARCH PROJECTS AGENCY-ENERGY

Approved:  \_\_\_\_\_ Date: Sept 11, 2013  
GENA E. CADIEUX  
DEPUTY GENERAL COUNSEL  
FOR TECHNOLOGY TRANSFER AND PROCUREMENT

<sup>23</sup> See 35 U.S.C. § 202(b)(4); 37 C.F.R. § 401.4.



## Cooperative Agreement Research, Development, or Demonstration Large Business and Foreign Entity

01. [FAR 52.227-1](#) Authorization and Consent (DEC 2007)  
Alternate I (APR 1984)
02. [FAR 52.227-2](#) Notice and Assistance Regarding Patent and Copyright  
Infringement (DEC 2007)
03. [2 CFR 910](#) Rights in Data – General  
Appendix A of Subpart D
04. [2 CFR 910](#) Patent Rights (Large Business Firms – No Waiver)  
Appendix A of Subpart D

NOTE: In reading these provisions, any reference to “contractor” shall mean “recipient,” and any reference to “contract” or “subcontract” shall mean “award” or “subaward.”

## **01. FAR 52.227-1 Authorization and Consent (DEC 2007) Alternate I (APR 1984)**

(a) The Government authorizes and consents to all use and manufacture of any invention described in and covered by a United States patent in the performance of this contract or any subcontract at any tier.

(b) The Contractor shall include the substance of this clause, including this paragraph (b), in all subcontracts that are expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold. However, omission of this clause from any subcontract, including those at or below the simplified acquisition threshold, does not affect this authorization and consent.

(End of clause)

## **02. FAR 52.227-2 Notice and Assistance Regarding Patent and Copyright Infringement (DEC 2007)**

(a) The Contractor shall report to the Contracting Officer, promptly and in reasonable written detail, each notice or claim of patent or copyright infringement based on the performance of this contract of which the Contractor has knowledge.

(b) In the event of any claim or suit against the Government on account of any alleged patent or copyright infringement arising out of the performance of this contract or out of the use of any supplies furnished or work or services performed under this contract, the Contractor shall furnish to the Government, when requested by the Contracting Officer, all evidence and information in the Contractor's possession pertaining to such claim or suit. Such evidence and information shall be furnished at the expense of the Government except where the Contractor has agreed to indemnify the Government.

(c) The Contractor shall include the substance of this clause, including this paragraph (c), in all subcontracts that are expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold.

(End of clause)

## **03. 2 CFR Part 910, Appendix A of Subpart D, Rights in Data - General**

(a) Definitions

*Computer Data Bases*, as used in this clause, means a collection of data in a form capable of, and for the purpose of, being stored in, processed, and operated on by a computer. The term does not include computer software.

*Computer software*, as used in this clause, means (i) computer programs which are data comprising a series of instructions, rules, routines or statements, regardless of the media in

which recorded, that allow or cause a computer to perform a specific operation or series of operations and (ii) data comprising source code listings, design details, algorithms, processes, flow charts, formulae, and related material that would enable the computer program to be produced, created or compiled. The term does not include computer data bases.

*Data*, as used in this clause, means recorded information, regardless of form or the media on which it may be recorded. The term includes technical data and computer software. The term does not include information incidental to administration, such as financial, administrative, cost or pricing, or management information.

*Form, fit, and function data*, as used in this clause, means data relating to items, components, or processes that are sufficient to enable physical and functional interchangeability, as well as data identifying source, size, configuration, mating, and attachment characteristics, functional characteristics, and performance requirements; except that for computer software it means data identifying source, functional characteristics, and performance requirements but specifically excludes the source code, algorithm, process, formulae, and flow charts of the software.

*Limited rights*, as used in this clause, means the rights of the Government in limited rights data as set forth in the Limited Rights Notice of subparagraph (g)(2) if included in this clause.

*Limited rights data*, as used in this clause, means data (other than computer software) developed at private expense that embody trade secrets or are commercial or financial and confidential or privileged.

*Restricted computer software*, as used in this clause, means computer software developed at private expense and that is a trade secret; is commercial or financial and is confidential or privileged; or is published copyrighted computer software; including minor modifications of such computer software.

*Restricted rights*, as used in this clause, means the rights of the Government in restricted computer software, as set forth in a Restricted Rights Notice of subparagraph (g)(3) if included in this clause, or as otherwise may be provided in a collateral agreement incorporated in and made part of this contract, including minor modifications of such computer software.

*Technical data*, as used in this clause, means data (other than computer software) which are of a scientific or technical nature. Technical data does not include computer software, but does include manuals and instructional materials and technical data formatted as a computer data base.

*Unlimited rights*, as used in this clause, means the right of the Government to use, disclose, reproduce, prepare derivative works, distribute copies to the public, and perform publicly and display publicly, in any manner and for any purpose, and to have or permit others to do so.

(b) Allocations of Rights

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this clause regarding copyright, the Government shall have unlimited rights in—

(i) Data first produced in the performance of this agreement;

(ii) Form, fit, and function data delivered under this agreement;

(iii) Data delivered under this agreement (except for restricted computer software) that constitute manuals or instructional and training material for installation, operation, or routine maintenance and repair of items, components, or processes delivered or furnished for use under this agreement; and

(iv) All other data delivered under this agreement unless provided otherwise for limited rights data or restricted computer software in accordance with paragraph (g) of this clause.

(2) The Recipient shall have the right to—

(i) Use, release to others, reproduce, distribute, or publish any data first produced or specifically used by the Recipient in the performance of this agreement, unless provided otherwise in paragraph (d) of this clause;

(ii) Protect from unauthorized disclosure and use those data which are limited rights data or restricted computer software to the extent provided in paragraph (g) of this clause;

(iii) Substantiate use of, add or correct limited rights, restricted rights, or copyright notices and to take over appropriate action, in accordance with paragraphs (e) and (f) of this clause; and

(iv) Establish claim to copyright subsisting in data first produced in the performance of this agreement to the extent provided in paragraph (c)(1) of this clause.

(c) Copyright

(1) Data first produced in the performance of this agreement. Unless provided otherwise in paragraph (d) of this clause, the Recipient may establish, without prior approval of the Contracting Officer, claim to copyright subsisting in data first produced in the performance of this agreement. When claim to copyright is made, the Recipient shall affix the applicable copyright notices of 17 U.S.C. 401 or 402 and acknowledgement of Government sponsorship (including agreement number) to the data when such data are delivered to the Government, as well as when the data are published or deposited for registration as a published work in the U.S. Copyright Office. For such copyrighted data, including computer software, the Recipient grants to the Government, and others acting on its behalf, a paid-up nonexclusive, irrevocable

worldwide license in such copyrighted data to reproduce, prepare derivative works, distribute copies to the public, and perform publicly and display publicly, by or on behalf of the Government.

(2) Data not first produced in the performance of this agreement. The Recipient shall not, without prior written permission of the Contracting Officer, incorporate in data delivered under this agreement any data not first produced in the performance of this agreement and which contains the copyright notice of 17 U.S.C. 401 or 402, unless the Recipient identifies such data and grants to the Government, or acquires on its behalf, a license of the same scope as set forth in paragraph (c)(1) of this clause; provided, however, that if such data are computer software the Government shall acquire a copyright license as set forth in paragraph (g)(3) of this clause if included in this agreement or as otherwise may be provided in a collateral agreement incorporated in or made part of this agreement.

(3) Removal of copyright notices. The Government agrees not to remove any copyright notices placed on data pursuant to this paragraph (c), and to include such notices on all reproductions of the data.

(d) Release, Publication and Use of Data

(1) The Recipient shall have the right to use, release to others, reproduce, distribute, or publish any data first produced or specifically used by the Recipient in the performance of this agreement, except to the extent such data may be subject to the Federal export control or national security laws or regulations, or unless otherwise provided in this paragraph of this clause or expressly set forth in this agreement.

(2) The Recipient agrees that to the extent it receives or is given access to data necessary for the performance of this award, which contain restrictive markings, the Recipient shall treat the data in accordance with such markings unless otherwise specifically authorized in writing by the contracting officer.

(e) Unauthorized Marking of Data

(1) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this agreement concerning inspection or acceptance, if any data delivered under this agreement are marked with the notices specified in paragraph (g)(2) or (g)(3) of this clause and use of such is not authorized by this clause, or if such data bears any other restrictive or limiting markings not authorized by this agreement, the Contracting Officer may at any time either return the data to the Recipient or cancel or ignore the markings. However, the following procedures shall apply prior to canceling or ignoring the markings.

(i) The Contracting Officer shall make written inquiry to the Recipient affording the Recipient 30 days from receipt of the inquiry to provide written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings;



(ii) If the Recipient fails to respond or fails to provide written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings within the 30-day period (or a longer time not exceeding 90 days approved in writing by the Contracting Officer for good cause shown), the Government shall have the right to cancel or ignore the markings at any time after said period and the data will no longer be made subject to any disclosure prohibitions.

(iii) If the Recipient provides written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings within the period set in paragraph (e)(1)(i) of this clause, the Contracting Officer shall consider such written justification and determine whether or not the markings are to be cancelled or ignored. If the Contracting Officer determines that the markings are authorized, the Recipient shall be so notified in writing. If the Contracting Officer determines, with concurrence of the head of the contracting activity, that the markings are not authorized, the Contracting Officer shall furnish the Recipient a written determination, which determination shall become the final agency decision regarding the appropriateness of the markings unless the Recipient files suit in a court of competent jurisdiction within 90 days of receipt of the Contracting Officer's decision. The Government shall continue to abide by the markings under this paragraph (e)(1)(iii) until final resolution of the matter either by the Contracting Officer's determination becoming final (in which instance the Government shall thereafter have the right to cancel or ignore the markings at any time and the data will no longer be made subject to any disclosure prohibitions), or by final disposition of the matter by court decision if suit is filed.

(2) The time limits in the procedures set forth in paragraph (e)(1) of this clause may be modified in accordance with agency regulations implementing the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) if necessary to respond to a request thereunder.

(f) Omitted or Incorrect Markings

(1) Data delivered to the Government without either the limited rights or restricted rights notice as authorized by paragraph (g) of this clause, or the copyright notice required by paragraph (c) of this clause, shall be deemed to have been furnished with unlimited rights, and the Government assumes no liability for the disclosure, use, or reproduction of such data. However, to the extent the data has not been disclosed without restriction outside the Government, the Recipient may request, within 6 months (or a longer time approved by the Contracting Officer for good cause shown) after delivery of such data, permission to have notices placed on qualifying data at the Recipient's expense, and the Contracting Officer may agree to do so if the Recipient:

- (i) Identifies the data to which the omitted notice is to be applied;
- (ii) Demonstrates that the omission of the notice was inadvertent;
- (iii) Establishes that the use of the proposed notice is authorized; and

(iv) Acknowledges that the Government has no liability with respect to the disclosure, use, or reproduction of any such data made prior to the addition of the notice or resulting from the omission of the notice.

(2) The Contracting Officer may also:

(i) Permit correction at the Recipient's expense of incorrect notices if the Recipient identifies the data on which correction of the notice is to be made, and demonstrates that the correct notice is authorized, or

(ii) Correct any incorrect notices.

(g) Protection of Limited Rights Data and Restricted Computer Software

When data other than that listed in paragraphs (b)(1)(i), (ii), and (iii) of this clause are specified to be delivered under this agreement and qualify as either limited rights data or restricted computer software, if the Recipient desires to continue protection of such data, the Recipient shall withhold such data and not furnish them to the Government under this agreement. As a condition to this withholding, the Recipient shall identify the data being withheld and furnish form, fit, and function data in lieu thereof. Limited rights data that are formatted as a computer data base for delivery to the Government are to be treated as limited rights data and not restricted computer software.

(h) Subaward/Contract

The Recipient has the responsibility to obtain from its subrecipients/contractors all data and rights therein necessary to fulfill the Recipient's obligations to the Government under this agreement. If a subrecipient/contractor refuses to accept terms affording the Government such rights, the Recipient shall promptly bring such refusal to the attention of the Contracting Officer and not proceed with the subaward/contract award without further authorization.

(i) Additional Data Requirements

In addition to the data specified elsewhere in this agreement to be delivered, the Contracting Officer may, at any time during agreement performance or within a period of 3 years after acceptance of all items to be delivered under this agreement, order any data first produced or specifically used in the performance of this agreement. This clause is applicable to all data ordered under this subparagraph. Nothing contained in this subparagraph shall require the Recipient to deliver any data the withholding of which is authorized by this clause, or data which are specifically identified in this agreement as not subject to this clause. When data are to be delivered under this subparagraph, the Recipient will be compensated for converting the data into the prescribed form, for reproduction, and for delivery.

(j) The recipient agrees, except as may be otherwise specified in this award for specific data items listed as not subject to this paragraph, that the Contracting Officer or an authorized representative may, up to three years after acceptance of all items to be delivered under this award, inspect at the Recipient's facility any data withheld pursuant to paragraph (g) of this clause, for purposes of verifying the Recipient's assertion pertaining to the limited rights or restricted rights status of the data or for evaluating work performance. Where the Recipient whose data are to be inspected demonstrates to the Contracting Officer that there would be a possible conflict of interest if the inspection were made by a particular representative, the Contracting Officer shall designate an alternate inspector.

(End of clause)

#### **04. 2 CFR 910, Appendix A of Subpart D, Patent Rights (Large Business Firms - No Waiver)**

##### (a) Definitions

*DOE patent waiver regulations*, as used in this clause, means the Department of Energy patent waiver regulations in effect on the date of award. See 10 CFR part 784.

*Invention*, as used in this clause, means any invention or discovery which is or may be patentable or otherwise protectable under title 35 of the United States Code or any novel variety of plant that is or may be protectable under the Plant Variety Protection Act (7 U.S.C. 2321, *et seq.*).

*Patent Counsel*, as used in this clause, means the Department of Energy Patent Counsel assisting the awarding activity.

*Subject invention*, as used in this clause, means any invention of the Recipient conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under this agreement.

##### (b) Allocations of Principal Rights

(1) Assignment to the Government. The Recipient agrees to assign to the Government the entire right, title, and interest throughout the world in and to each subject invention, except to the extent that rights are retained by the Recipient under subparagraph (b)(2) and paragraph (d) of this clause.

(2) Greater rights determinations. The Recipient, or an employee-inventor after consultation with the Recipient, may request greater rights than the nonexclusive license and the foreign patent rights provided in paragraph (d) of this clause on identified inventions in accordance with the DOE patent waiver regulation. Each determination of greater rights under this agreement shall be subject to paragraph (c) of this clause, unless otherwise provided in the

greater rights determination, and to the reservations and conditions deemed to be appropriate by the Secretary of Energy or designee.

(c) Minimum Rights Acquired by the Government

With respect to each subject invention to which the Department of Energy grants the Recipient principal or exclusive rights, the Recipient agrees to grant to the Government: A nonexclusive, nontransferable, irrevocable, paid-up license to practice or have practiced each subject invention throughout the world by or on behalf of the Government of the United States (including any Government agency); “march-in rights” as set forth in 37 CFR 401.14(a)(J); preference for U.S. industry as set forth in 37 CFR 401.14(a)(I); periodic reports upon request, no more frequently than annually, on the utilization or intent of utilization of a subject invention in a manner consistent with 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(50); and such Government rights in any instrument transferring rights in a subject invention.

(d) Minimum Rights to the Recipient

(1) The Recipient is hereby granted a revocable, nonexclusive, royalty-free license in each patent application filed in any country on a subject invention and any resulting patent in which the Government obtains title, unless the Recipient fails to disclose the subject invention within the times specified in subparagraph (e)(2) of this clause. The Recipient's license extends to its domestic subsidiaries and affiliates, if any, within the corporate structure of which the Recipient is a part and includes the right to grant sublicenses of the same scope to the extent the Recipient was legally obligated to do so at the time the agreement was awarded. The license is transferable only with the approval of DOE except when transferred to the successor of that part of the Recipient's business to which the invention pertains.

(2) The Recipient may request the right to acquire patent rights to a subject invention in any foreign country where the Government has elected not to secure such rights, subject to the minimum rights acquired by the Government similar to paragraph (c) of this clause. Such request must be made in writing to the Patent Counsel as part of the disclosure required by subparagraph (e)(2) of this clause, with a copy to the DOE Contracting Officer. DOE approval, if given, will be based on a determination that this would best serve the national interest.

(e) Invention Identification, Disclosures, and Reports

(1) The Recipient shall establish and maintain active and effective procedures to assure that subject inventions are promptly identified and disclosed to Recipient personnel responsible for patent matters within 6 months of conception and/or first actual reduction to practice, whichever occurs first in the performance of work under this agreement. These procedures shall include the maintenance of laboratory notebooks or equivalent records and other records as are reasonably necessary to document the conception and/or the first actual reduction to practice of subject inventions, and records that show that the procedures for identifying and disclosing the inventions are followed. Upon request, the Recipient shall furnish the Contracting

Officer a description of such procedures for evaluation and for determination as to their effectiveness.

(2) The Recipient shall disclose each subject invention to the DOE Patent Counsel with a copy to the Contracting Officer within 2 months after the inventor discloses it in writing to Recipient personnel responsible for patent matters or, if earlier, within 6 months after the Recipient becomes aware that a subject invention has been made, but in any event before any on sale, public use, or publication of such invention known to the Recipient. The disclosure to DOE shall be in the form of a written report and shall identify the agreement under which the invention was made and the inventor(s). It shall be sufficiently complete in technical detail to convey a clear understanding, to the extent known at the time of the disclosure, of the nature, purpose, operation, and physical, chemical, biological, or electrical characteristics of the invention. The disclosure shall also identify any publication, on sale, or public use of the invention and whether a manuscript describing the invention has been submitted for publication and, if so, whether it has been accepted for publication at the time of disclosure. In addition, after disclosure to DOE, the Recipient shall promptly notify Patent Counsel of the acceptance of any manuscript describing the invention for publication or of any on sale or public use planned by the Recipient. The report should also include any request for a greater rights determination in accordance with subparagraph (b)(2) of this clause. When an invention is disclosed to DOE under this paragraph, it shall be deemed to have been made in the manner specified in Sections (a)(1) and (a)(2) of 42 U.S.C. 5908, unless the Recipient contends in writing at the time the invention is disclosed that it was not so made.

(3) The Recipient shall furnish the Contracting Officer a final report, within 3 months after completion of the work listing all subject inventions or containing a statement that there were no such inventions, and listing all subawards/contracts at any tier containing a patent rights clause or containing a statement that there were no such subawards/contracts.

(4) The Recipient agrees to require, by written agreement, its employees, other than clerical and nontechnical employees, to disclose promptly in writing to personnel identified as responsible for the administration of patent matters and in a format suggested by the Recipient each subject invention made under subaward/contract in order that the Recipient can comply with the disclosure provisions of paragraph (c) of this clause, and to execute all papers necessary to file patent applications on subject inventions and to establish the Government's rights in the subject inventions. This disclosure format should require, as a minimum, the information required by subparagraph (e)(2) of this clause.

(5) The Recipient agrees, subject to FAR 27.302(j), that the Government may duplicate and disclose subject invention disclosures and all other reports and papers furnished or required to be furnished pursuant to this clause.

(f) Examination of Records Relating to Inventions

(1) The Contracting Officer or any authorized representative shall, until 3 years after final payment under this agreement, have the right to examine any books (including laboratory notebooks), records, and documents of the Recipient relating to the conception or first actual reduction to practice of inventions in the same field of technology as the work under this agreement to determine whether—(i) Any such inventions are subject inventions; (ii) The Recipient has established and maintains the procedures required by subparagraphs (e)(1) and (4) of this clause; (iii) The Recipient and its inventors have complied with the procedures.

(2) If the Contracting Officer learns of an unreported Recipient invention which the Contracting Officer believes may be a subject invention, the Recipient may be required to disclose the invention to DOE for a determination of ownership rights.

(3) Any examination of records under this paragraph will be subject to appropriate conditions to protect the confidentiality of the information involved.

(g) Subaward/Contract

(1) The recipient shall include the clause PATENT RIGHTS (SMALL BUSINESS FIRMS AND NONPROFIT ORGANIZATIONS) (suitably modified to identify the parties) in all subawards/contracts, regardless of tier, for experimental, developmental, demonstration, or research work to be performed by a small business firm or domestic nonprofit organization, except where the work of the subaward/contract is subject to an Exceptional Circumstances Determination by DOE. In all other subawards/contracts, regardless of tier, for experimental, developmental, demonstration, or research work, the Recipient shall include this clause (suitably modified to identify the parties), or an alternate clause as directed by the contracting officer. The Recipient shall not, as part of the consideration for awarding the subaward/contract, obtain rights in the subrecipient's/contractor's subject inventions.

(2) In the event of a refusal by a prospective subrecipient/contractor to accept such a clause the Recipient: (i) Shall promptly submit a written notice to the Contracting Officer setting forth the subrecipient/contractor's reasons for such refusal and other pertinent information that may expedite disposition of the matter; and (ii) Shall not proceed with such subaward/contract without the written authorization of the Contracting Officer.

(3) In the case of subawards/contracts at any tier, DOE, the subrecipient/contractor, and Recipient agree that the mutual obligations of the parties created by this clause constitute a contract between the subrecipient/contractor and DOE with respect to those matters covered by this clause.

(4) The Recipient shall promptly notify the Contracting Officer in writing upon the award of any subaward/contract at any tier containing a patent rights clause by identifying the subrecipient/contractor, the applicable patent rights clause, the work to be performed under the subaward/contract, and the dates of award and estimated completion. Upon request of the

Contracting Officer, the Recipient shall furnish a copy of such subaward/contract, and, no more frequently than annually, a listing of the subawards/contracts that have been awarded.

(5) The Recipient shall identify all subject inventions of a subrecipient/contractor of which it acquires knowledge in the performance of this agreement and shall notify the Patent Counsel, with a copy to the contracting officer, promptly upon identification of the inventions.

(h) Atomic Energy

(1) No claim for pecuniary award of compensation under the provisions of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, shall be asserted with respect to any invention or discovery made or conceived in the course of or under this agreement.

(2) Except as otherwise authorized in writing by the Contracting Officer, the Recipient will obtain patent agreements to effectuate the provisions of subparagraph (h)(1) of this clause from all persons who perform any part of the work under this agreement, except nontechnical personnel, such as clerical employees and manual laborers.

(i) Publication

It is recognized that during the course of the work under this agreement, the Recipient or its employees may from time to time desire to release or publish information regarding scientific or technical developments conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under this agreement. In order that public disclosure of such information will not adversely affect the patent interests of DOE or the Recipient, patent approval for release of publication shall be secured from Patent Counsel prior to any such release or publication.

(j) Forfeiture of Rights in Unreported Subject Inventions

(1) The Recipient shall forfeit and assign to the Government, at the request of the Secretary of Energy or designee, all rights in any subject invention which the Recipient fails to report to Patent Counsel within six months after the time the Recipient: (i) Files or causes to be filed a United States or foreign patent application thereon; or (ii) Submits the final report required by subparagraph (e)(3) of this clause, whichever is later.

(2) However, the Recipient shall not forfeit rights in a subject invention if, within the time specified in subparagraph (e)(2) of this clause, the Recipient: (i) Prepares a written decision based upon a review of the record that the invention was neither conceived nor first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under the agreement and delivers the decision to Patent Counsel, with a copy to the Contracting Officer, or (ii) Contending that the invention is not a subject invention, the Recipient nevertheless discloses the invention and all facts pertinent to this contention to the Patent Counsel, with a copy of the Contracting Officer; or (iii) Establishes that the failure to disclose did not result from the Recipient's fault or negligence.

(3) Pending written assignment of the patent application and patents on a subject invention determined by the Secretary of Energy or designee to be forfeited (such determination to be a final decision under the Disputes clause of this agreement), the Recipient shall be deemed to hold the invention and the patent applications and patents pertaining thereto in trust for the Government. The forfeiture provision of this paragraph (j) shall be in addition to and shall not supersede other rights and remedies which the Government may have with respect to subject inventions.

(End of clause)





## **Cooperative Agreement Research, Development, or Demonstration Domestic Large Business**

01. [FAR 52.227-1](#) Authorization and Consent (DEC 2007)  
Alternate I (APR 1984)
02. [FAR 52.227-2](#) Notice and Assistance Regarding Patent and Copyright  
Infringement (DEC 2007)
03. [2 CFR 910](#) Rights in Data – General  
Appendix A of Subpart D
04. [W\(C\) 2014-003](#) Patent Rights – Waiver (JUL 1996)  
Class Patent Waiver

NOTE: In reading these provisions, any reference to “contractor” shall mean “recipient,” and any reference to “contract” or “subcontract” shall mean “award” or “subaward.”

## **01. FAR 52.227-1 Authorization and Consent (DEC 2007) Alternate I (APR 1984)**

(a) The Government authorizes and consents to all use and manufacture of any invention described in and covered by a United States patent in the performance of this contract or any subcontract at any tier.

(b) The Contractor shall include the substance of this clause, including this paragraph (b), in all subcontracts that are expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold. However, omission of this clause from any subcontract, including those at or below the simplified acquisition threshold, does not affect this authorization and consent.

(End of clause)

## **02. FAR 52.227-2 Notice and Assistance Regarding Patent and Copyright Infringement (DEC 2007)**

(a) The Contractor shall report to the Contracting Officer, promptly and in reasonable written detail, each notice or claim of patent or copyright infringement based on the performance of this contract of which the Contractor has knowledge.

(b) In the event of any claim or suit against the Government on account of any alleged patent or copyright infringement arising out of the performance of this contract or out of the use of any supplies furnished or work or services performed under this contract, the Contractor shall furnish to the Government, when requested by the Contracting Officer, all evidence and information in the Contractor's possession pertaining to such claim or suit. Such evidence and information shall be furnished at the expense of the Government except where the Contractor has agreed to indemnify the Government.

(c) The Contractor shall include the substance of this clause, including this paragraph (c), in all subcontracts that are expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold.

(End of clause)

## **03. 2 CFR Part 910, Appendix A of Subpart D, Rights in Data - General**

(a) Definitions

*Computer Data Bases*, as used in this clause, means a collection of data in a form capable of, and for the purpose of, being stored in, processed, and operated on by a computer. The term does not include computer software.

*Computer software*, as used in this clause, means (i) computer programs which are data comprising a series of instructions, rules, routines or statements, regardless of the media in

which recorded, that allow or cause a computer to perform a specific operation or series of operations and (ii) data comprising source code listings, design details, algorithms, processes, flow charts, formulae, and related material that would enable the computer program to be produced, created or compiled. The term does not include computer data bases.

*Data*, as used in this clause, means recorded information, regardless of form or the media on which it may be recorded. The term includes technical data and computer software. The term does not include information incidental to administration, such as financial, administrative, cost or pricing, or management information.

*Form, fit, and function data*, as used in this clause, means data relating to items, components, or processes that are sufficient to enable physical and functional interchangeability, as well as data identifying source, size, configuration, mating, and attachment characteristics, functional characteristics, and performance requirements; except that for computer software it means data identifying source, functional characteristics, and performance requirements but specifically excludes the source code, algorithm, process, formulae, and flow charts of the software.

*Limited rights*, as used in this clause, means the rights of the Government in limited rights data as set forth in the Limited Rights Notice of subparagraph (g)(2) if included in this clause.

*Limited rights data*, as used in this clause, means data (other than computer software) developed at private expense that embody trade secrets or are commercial or financial and confidential or privileged.

*Restricted computer software*, as used in this clause, means computer software developed at private expense and that is a trade secret; is commercial or financial and is confidential or privileged; or is published copyrighted computer software; including minor modifications of such computer software.

*Restricted rights*, as used in this clause, means the rights of the Government in restricted computer software, as set forth in a Restricted Rights Notice of subparagraph (g)(3) if included in this clause, or as otherwise may be provided in a collateral agreement incorporated in and made part of this contract, including minor modifications of such computer software.

*Technical data*, as used in this clause, means data (other than computer software) which are of a scientific or technical nature. Technical data does not include computer software, but does include manuals and instructional materials and technical data formatted as a computer data base.

*Unlimited rights*, as used in this clause, means the right of the Government to use, disclose, reproduce, prepare derivative works, distribute copies to the public, and perform publicly and display publicly, in any manner and for any purpose, and to have or permit others to do so.

(b) Allocations of Rights

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this clause regarding copyright, the Government shall have unlimited rights in—

(i) Data first produced in the performance of this agreement;

(ii) Form, fit, and function data delivered under this agreement;

(iii) Data delivered under this agreement (except for restricted computer software) that constitute manuals or instructional and training material for installation, operation, or routine maintenance and repair of items, components, or processes delivered or furnished for use under this agreement; and

(iv) All other data delivered under this agreement unless provided otherwise for limited rights data or restricted computer software in accordance with paragraph (g) of this clause.

(2) The Recipient shall have the right to—

(i) Use, release to others, reproduce, distribute, or publish any data first produced or specifically used by the Recipient in the performance of this agreement, unless provided otherwise in paragraph (d) of this clause;

(ii) Protect from unauthorized disclosure and use those data which are limited rights data or restricted computer software to the extent provided in paragraph (g) of this clause;

(iii) Substantiate use of, add or correct limited rights, restricted rights, or copyright notices and to take over appropriate action, in accordance with paragraphs (e) and (f) of this clause; and

(iv) Establish claim to copyright subsisting in data first produced in the performance of this agreement to the extent provided in paragraph (c)(1) of this clause.

(c) Copyright

(1) Data first produced in the performance of this agreement. Unless provided otherwise in paragraph (d) of this clause, the Recipient may establish, without prior approval of the Contracting Officer, claim to copyright subsisting in data first produced in the performance of this agreement. When claim to copyright is made, the Recipient shall affix the applicable copyright notices of 17 U.S.C. 401 or 402 and acknowledgement of Government sponsorship (including agreement number) to the data when such data are delivered to the Government, as well as when the data are published or deposited for registration as a published work in the U.S. Copyright Office. For such copyrighted data, including computer software, the Recipient grants to the Government, and others acting on its behalf, a paid-up nonexclusive, irrevocable

worldwide license in such copyrighted data to reproduce, prepare derivative works, distribute copies to the public, and perform publicly and display publicly, by or on behalf of the Government.

(2) Data not first produced in the performance of this agreement. The Recipient shall not, without prior written permission of the Contracting Officer, incorporate in data delivered under this agreement any data not first produced in the performance of this agreement and which contains the copyright notice of 17 U.S.C. 401 or 402, unless the Recipient identifies such data and grants to the Government, or acquires on its behalf, a license of the same scope as set forth in paragraph (c)(1) of this clause; provided, however, that if such data are computer software the Government shall acquire a copyright license as set forth in paragraph (g)(3) of this clause if included in this agreement or as otherwise may be provided in a collateral agreement incorporated in or made part of this agreement.

(3) Removal of copyright notices. The Government agrees not to remove any copyright notices placed on data pursuant to this paragraph (c), and to include such notices on all reproductions of the data.

(d) Release, Publication and Use of Data

(1) The Recipient shall have the right to use, release to others, reproduce, distribute, or publish any data first produced or specifically used by the Recipient in the performance of this agreement, except to the extent such data may be subject to the Federal export control or national security laws or regulations, or unless otherwise provided in this paragraph of this clause or expressly set forth in this agreement.

(2) The Recipient agrees that to the extent it receives or is given access to data necessary for the performance of this award, which contain restrictive markings, the Recipient shall treat the data in accordance with such markings unless otherwise specifically authorized in writing by the contracting officer.

(e) Unauthorized Marking of Data

(1) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this agreement concerning inspection or acceptance, if any data delivered under this agreement are marked with the notices specified in paragraph (g)(2) or (g)(3) of this clause and use of such is not authorized by this clause, or if such data bears any other restrictive or limiting markings not authorized by this agreement, the Contracting Officer may at any time either return the data to the Recipient or cancel or ignore the markings. However, the following procedures shall apply prior to canceling or ignoring the markings.

(i) The Contracting Officer shall make written inquiry to the Recipient affording the Recipient 30 days from receipt of the inquiry to provide written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings;

(ii) If the Recipient fails to respond or fails to provide written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings within the 30-day period (or a longer time not exceeding 90 days approved in writing by the Contracting Officer for good cause shown), the Government shall have the right to cancel or ignore the markings at any time after said period and the data will no longer be made subject to any disclosure prohibitions.

(iii) If the Recipient provides written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings within the period set in paragraph (e)(1)(i) of this clause, the Contracting Officer shall consider such written justification and determine whether or not the markings are to be cancelled or ignored. If the Contracting Officer determines that the markings are authorized, the Recipient shall be so notified in writing. If the Contracting Officer determines, with concurrence of the head of the contracting activity, that the markings are not authorized, the Contracting Officer shall furnish the Recipient a written determination, which determination shall become the final agency decision regarding the appropriateness of the markings unless the Recipient files suit in a court of competent jurisdiction within 90 days of receipt of the Contracting Officer's decision. The Government shall continue to abide by the markings under this paragraph (e)(1)(iii) until final resolution of the matter either by the Contracting Officer's determination becoming final (in which instance the Government shall thereafter have the right to cancel or ignore the markings at any time and the data will no longer be made subject to any disclosure prohibitions), or by final disposition of the matter by court decision if suit is filed.

(2) The time limits in the procedures set forth in paragraph (e)(1) of this clause may be modified in accordance with agency regulations implementing the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) if necessary to respond to a request thereunder.

(f) Omitted or Incorrect Markings

(1) Data delivered to the Government without either the limited rights or restricted rights notice as authorized by paragraph (g) of this clause, or the copyright notice required by paragraph (c) of this clause, shall be deemed to have been furnished with unlimited rights, and the Government assumes no liability for the disclosure, use, or reproduction of such data. However, to the extent the data has not been disclosed without restriction outside the Government, the Recipient may request, within 6 months (or a longer time approved by the Contracting Officer for good cause shown) after delivery or such data, permission to have notices placed on qualifying data at the Recipient's expense, and the Contracting Officer may agree to do so if the Recipient:

- (i) Identifies the data to which the omitted notice is to be applied;
- (ii) Demonstrates that the omission of the notice was inadvertent;
- (iii) Establishes that the use of the proposed notice is authorized; and

(iv) Acknowledges that the Government has no liability with respect to the disclosure, use, or reproduction of any such data made prior to the addition of the notice or resulting from the omission of the notice.

(2) The Contracting Officer may also:

(i) Permit correction at the Recipient's expense of incorrect notices if the Recipient identifies the data on which correction of the notice is to be made, and demonstrates that the correct notice is authorized, or

(ii) Correct any incorrect notices.

(g) Protection of Limited Rights Data and Restricted Computer Software

When data other than that listed in paragraphs (b)(1)(i), (ii), and (iii) of this clause are specified to be delivered under this agreement and qualify as either limited rights data or restricted computer software, if the Recipient desires to continue protection of such data, the Recipient shall withhold such data and not furnish them to the Government under this agreement. As a condition to this withholding, the Recipient shall identify the data being withheld and furnish form, fit, and function data in lieu thereof. Limited rights data that are formatted as a computer data base for delivery to the Government are to be treated as limited rights data and not restricted computer software.

(h) Subaward/Contract

The Recipient has the responsibility to obtain from its subrecipients/contractors all data and rights therein necessary to fulfill the Recipient's obligations to the Government under this agreement. If a subrecipient/contractor refuses to accept terms affording the Government such rights, the Recipient shall promptly bring such refusal to the attention of the Contracting Officer and not proceed with the subaward/contract award without further authorization.

(i) Additional Data Requirements

In addition to the data specified elsewhere in this agreement to be delivered, the Contracting Officer may, at any time during agreement performance or within a period of 3 years after acceptance of all items to be delivered under this agreement, order any data first produced or specifically used in the performance of this agreement. This clause is applicable to all data ordered under this subparagraph. Nothing contained in this subparagraph shall require the Recipient to deliver any data the withholding of which is authorized by this clause, or data which are specifically identified in this agreement as not subject to this clause. When data are to be delivered under this subparagraph, the Recipient will be compensated for converting the data into the prescribed form, for reproduction, and for delivery.

(j) The recipient agrees, except as may be otherwise specified in this award for specific data items listed as not subject to this paragraph, that the Contracting Officer or an authorized representative may, up to three years after acceptance of all items to be delivered under this award, inspect at the Recipient's facility any data withheld pursuant to paragraph (g) of this clause, for purposes of verifying the Recipient's assertion pertaining to the limited rights or restricted rights status of the data or for evaluating work performance. Where the Recipient whose data are to be inspected demonstrates to the Contracting Officer that there would be a possible conflict of interest if the inspection were made by a particular representative, the Contracting Officer shall designate an alternate inspector.

(End of clause)

#### **04. W(C) 2014-003 Class Patent Waiver**

(a) Definitions.

As used in this clause:

Background patent means a domestic patent covering an invention or discovery which is not a Subject Invention and which is owned or controlled by the Contractor at any time through the completion of this contract:

(i) Which the Contractor, but not the Government, has the right to license to others without obligation to pay royalties thereon, and

(ii) Infringement of which cannot reasonably be avoided upon the practice of any specific process, method, machine, manufacture or composition of matter (including relatively minor modifications thereof) which is a subject of the research, development, or demonstration work performed under this contract.

Contract means any contract, grant, agreement, understanding, or other arrangement, which includes research, development, or demonstration work, and includes any assignment or substitution of parties.

DOE patent waiver regulations means the Department of Energy patent waiver regulations at 10 CFR Part 784.

Invention as used in this clause, means any invention or discovery which is or may be patentable or otherwise protectable under Title 35 of the United States Code or any novel variety of plant that is or may be protectable under the Plant Variety Protection Act (7 U.S.C. 2321 et seq.).

Made when used in relation to any invention means the conception or first actual reduction to practice of such invention.

Nonprofit organization means a university or other institution of higher education or an organization of the type described in section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954 (26



U.S.C. 501(c)) and exempt from taxation under section 501(a) of the Internal Revenue Code (26 U.S.C. 501(a)) or any nonprofit scientific or educational organization qualified under a state nonprofit organization statute.

Patent Counsel means the Department of Energy Patent Counsel assisting the procuring activity.

Practical application means to manufacture, in the case of a composition or product; to practice, in the case of a process or method; or to operate, in the case of a machine or system; and, in each case, under such conditions as to establish that the invention is being utilized and that its benefits are, to the extent permitted by law or Government regulations, available to the public on reasonable terms.

Secretary means the Secretary of Energy.

Small business firm means a small business concern as defined at Section 2 of the Pub. L. 85-536 (15 U.S.C. 632) and implementing regulations of the Administrator of the Small Business Administration. For the purpose of this clause, the size standards for small business concerns involved in Government procurement and subcontracting at 13 CFR 121.3-8 and 13 CFR 121.3-12, respectively, will be used.

Subject invention means any invention of the Contractor conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under this contract, provided that in the case of a variety of plant, the date of determination (as defined in section 41(d) of the Plant Variety Protection Act (7 U.S.C. 2401(d)) must also occur during the period of contract performance.

(b) Allocation of principal rights.

Whereas DOE has granted a waiver of rights to subject inventions to the Contractor, the Contractor may elect to retain the entire right, title, and interest throughout the world to each subject invention subject to the provisions of this clause and 35 U.S.C. 202 and 203. With respect to any subject invention in which the Contractor elects to retain title, the Federal Government shall have a nonexclusive, nontransferable, irrevocable, paid-up license to practice or have practiced for or on behalf of the United States the subject invention throughout the world.

(c) Invention disclosure, election of title, and filing of patent applications by Contractor.

(1) The Contractor shall disclose each subject invention to the Patent Counsel within six months after conception or first actual reduction to practice, whichever occurs first in the course of or under this contract, but in any event, prior to any sale, public use, or public disclosure of such invention known to the Contractor. The disclosure to the Patent Counsel shall be in the form of a written report and shall identify the inventors and the contract under which the invention was made. It shall be sufficiently complete in technical detail to convey a

clear understanding, to the extent known at the time of the disclosure, of the nature, purpose, operation, and physical, chemical, biological, or electrical characteristics of the invention. The disclosure shall also identify any publication, on sale, or public use of the invention and whether a manuscript describing the invention has been submitted for publication and, if so, whether it has been accepted for publication at the time of disclosure. In addition, after disclosure to the Patent Counsel, the Contractor shall promptly notify the Patent Counsel of the acceptance of any manuscript describing the invention for publication or of any on sale or public use planned by the Contractor.

(2) The Contractor shall elect in writing whether or not to retain title to any such invention by notifying the Patent Counsel at the time of disclosure or within 8 months of disclosure, as to those countries (including the United States) in which the Contractor will retain title; provided, that in any case where publication, on sale, or public use has initiated the 1-year statutory period wherein valid patent protection can still be obtained in the United States, the period of election of title may be shortened by the Agency to a date that is no more than 60 days prior to the end of the statutory period. The Contractor shall notify the Patent Counsel as to those countries (including the United States) in which the Contractor will retain title not later than 60 days prior to the end of the statutory period.

(3) The Contractor shall file its United States patent application on an elected invention within 1 year after election, but not later than at least 60 days prior to the end of any statutory period wherein valid patent protection can be obtained in the United States after a publication, on sale, or public use. The Contractor shall file patent applications in additional countries (including the European Patent Office and under the Patent Cooperation Treaty) within either 10 months of the corresponding initial patent application or 6 months from the date permission is granted by the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks to file foreign patent applications where foreign filing has been prohibited by a Secrecy Order.

(4) Requests for extension of the time for disclosure to the Patent Counsel, election, and filing may, at the discretion of DOE, be granted, and will normally be granted unless the Patent Counsel has reason to believe that a particular extension would prejudice the Government's interest.

(d) Conditions when the Government may obtain title notwithstanding an existing waiver.

The Contractor shall assign and hereby assigns to DOE, upon written request from DOE, title to any subject invention--

(1) If the Contractor elects not to retain title to a subject invention;

(2) If the Contractor fails to disclose or elect the subject invention within the times specified in paragraph (c) of this clause (provided that DOE may only request title within 60 days after learning of the Contractor's failure to report or elect within the specified times);

(3) In those countries in which the Contractor fails to file patent applications within the times specified in paragraph (c) of this clause; provided, however, that if the Contractor has filed a patent application in a country after the times specified in paragraph (c) of this clause, but prior to its receipt of the written request of DOE, the Contractor shall continue to retain title in that country;

(4) In any country in which the Contractor decides not to continue the prosecution of any application for, to pay the maintenance fees on, or defend in reexamination or opposition proceeding on, a patent on a subject invention;

(5) If the waiver authorizing the use of this clause is terminated as provided in paragraph (p) of this clause; or

(6) Upon a breach of paragraph (h) or paragraph (t) of this clause.

(e) Minimum rights to Contractor when the Government retains title.

(1) The Contractor shall retain a nonexclusive, royalty-free license throughout the world in each subject invention to which the Government obtains title under paragraph (d) of this clause except if the Contractor fails to disclose the subject invention within the times specified in paragraph (c) of this clause or breaches paragraph (h) or (t). The Contractor's license extends to its domestic subsidiaries and affiliates, if any, within the corporate structure of which the Contractor is a part and includes the right to grant sublicenses of the same scope to the extent the Contractor was legally obligated to do so at the time the contract was awarded. The license is transferable only with the approval of DOE except when transferred to the successor of that part of the Contractor's business to which the invention pertains.

(2) The Contractor's domestic license may be revoked or modified by DOE to the extent necessary to achieve expeditious practical application of the subject invention pursuant to an application for an exclusive license submitted in accordance with applicable provisions in 37 CFR part 404 and DOE licensing regulations. This license shall not be revoked in that field of use or the geographical areas in which the Contractor has achieved practical application and continues to make the benefits of the invention reasonably accessible to the public. The license in any foreign country may be revoked or modified at the discretion of DOE to the extent the Contractor, its licensees, or its domestic subsidiaries or affiliates have failed to achieve practical application in that foreign country.

(3) Before revocation or modification of the license, DOE shall furnish the Contractor a written notice of its intention to revoke or modify the license, and the Contractor shall be allowed 30 days (or such other time as may be authorized by DOE for good cause shown by the Contractor) after the notice to show cause why the license should not be revoked or modified. The Contractor has the right to appeal, in accordance with applicable agency licensing regulations and 37 CFR part 404 concerning the licensing of Government-owned inventions, any decision concerning the revocation or modification of its license.

(f) Contractor action to protect the Government's interest.

(1) The Contractor agrees to execute or to have executed and promptly deliver to DOE all instruments necessary to:

(i) establish or confirm the rights the Government has throughout the world in those subject inventions to which the Contractor elects to retain title, and

(ii) convey title to DOE when requested under paragraphs (d) and (n)(2) of this clause, and to enable the Government to obtain patent protection throughout the world in that subject invention.

(2) The Contractor agrees to require, by written agreement, its employees, other than clerical and nontechnical employees, to disclose promptly in writing to personnel identified as responsible for the administration of patent matters and in a format suggested by the Contractor each subject invention made under contract in order that the Contractor can comply with the disclosure provisions of paragraph (c) of this clause, and to execute all papers necessary to file patent applications on subject inventions and to establish the Government's rights in the subject inventions. This disclosure format should require, as a minimum, the information required by paragraph (c)(1) of this clause. The Contractor shall instruct such employees through employee agreements or other suitable educational programs on the importance of reporting inventions in sufficient time to permit the filing of patent applications prior to U.S. or foreign statutory bars.

(3) The Contractor shall notify DOE of any decision not to continue the prosecution of a patent application, pay maintenance fees, or defend in a reexamination or opposition proceeding on a patent, in any country, not less than 30 days before the expiration of the response period required by the relevant patent office.

(4) The Contractor agrees to include, within the specification of any United States patent application and any patent issuing thereon covering a subject invention, the following statement: "This invention was made with Government support under (identify the contract) awarded by DOE. The Government has certain rights in this invention."

(5) The Contractor shall establish and maintain active and effective procedures to assure that subject inventions are promptly identified and disclosed to Contractor personnel responsible for patent matters within 6 months of conception and/or first actual reduction to practice, whichever occurs first in the course of or under this contract. These procedures shall include the maintenance of laboratory notebooks or equivalent records and other records as are reasonably necessary to document the conception and/or the first actual reduction to practice of subject inventions, and records that show that the procedures for identifying and disclosing the inventions are followed. Upon request, the Contractor shall furnish the Patent

Counsel a description of such procedures for evaluation and for determination as to their effectiveness.

(6) The Contractor agrees, when licensing a subject invention, to arrange to avoid royalty charges on acquisitions involving Government funds, including funds derived through Military Assistance Program of the Government or otherwise derived through the Government; to refund any amounts received as royalty charges on the subject invention in acquisitions for, or on behalf of, the Government; and to provide for such refund in any instrument transferring rights in the invention to any party.

(7) The Contractor shall furnish the Patent Counsel the following:

(i) Interim reports every 12 months (or such longer period as may be specified by the Patent Counsel) from the date of the contract, listing subject inventions during that period and certifying that all subject inventions have been disclosed or that there are no such inventions.

(ii) A final report, within 3 months after completion of the contracted work, listing all subject inventions or certifying that there were no such inventions, and listing all subcontracts at any tier containing a patent rights clause or certifying that there were no such subcontracts.

(8) The Contractor shall promptly notify the Patent Counsel in writing upon the award of any subcontract at any tier containing a patent rights clause by identifying the subcontractor, the applicable patent rights clause, the work to be performed under the subcontract, and the dates of award and estimated completion. Upon request of the Patent Counsel, the Contractor shall furnish a copy of such subcontract, and no more frequently than annually, a listing of the subcontracts that have been awarded.

(9) The Contractor shall provide, upon request, the filing date, serial number and title, a copy of the patent application (including an English-language version if filed in a language other than English), and patent number and issue date for any subject invention for which the Contractor has retained title.

(10) Upon request, the Contractor shall furnish the Government an irrevocable power to inspect and make copies of the patent application file.

(g) Subcontracts.

(1) Unless otherwise directed by the Contracting Officer, the Contractor shall include the patent rights clause required by 2 CFR 910.362(b), suitably modified to identify the parties, in all subcontracts, regardless of tier, for experimental, developmental, or research work to be performed by a small business firm or nonprofit organization, except where the work of the subcontract is subject to an Exceptional Circumstances Determination by DOE. In all other

subcontracts, regardless of tier, for experimental, developmental, demonstration, or research work, the Contractor shall include the patent rights clause required by 2 CFR 910.362(c), suitably modified to identify the parties.

(2) The Contractor shall not, as part of the consideration for awarding the subcontract, obtain rights in the subcontractor's subject inventions.

(3) In the case of subcontractors at any tier, the Department, the subcontractor, and Contractor agree that the mutual obligations of the parties created by this clause constitute a contract between the subcontractor and the Department with respect to those matters covered by this clause.

(4) The Contractor shall promptly notify the Contracting Officer in writing upon the award of any subcontract at any tier containing a patent rights clause by identifying the subcontractor, the applicable patent rights clause, the work to be performed under the subcontract, and the dates of award and estimated completion. Upon request of the Contracting Officer, the Contracting Officer shall furnish a copy of such subcontract, and, no more frequently than annually, a listing of the subcontracts that have been awarded.

(h) Reporting on utilization of subject inventions.

(1) The Contractor agrees to submit on request periodic reports no more frequently than annually on the utilization of each waived subject invention or on efforts at obtaining such utilization that are being made by the Contractor and any of its licensees or assignees including compliance with paragraph (t) of this clause. Each report shall include information regarding the status of development, date of first commercial sale or use, products that embody or are made through the use of the waived such invention, manufacturing locations of such products and such other data and information as DOE may reasonably specify. The report shall further include a certification from the Contractor that the Contractor, including its licensees, is in compliance with the requirements of this clause.

(2) The Contractor also agrees to provide additional reports as may be requested by DOE in connection with any march-in proceedings undertaken by DOE in accordance with paragraph (j) of this clause.

(3) To the extent data or information supplied under this paragraph is considered by the Contractor, its licensee or assignee to be privileged and confidential and is so marked, DOE agrees that, to the extent permitted by law, it shall not disclose such information to persons outside the Government.

(i) Preference for United States industry.

Notwithstanding any other provision of this clause, the Contractor agrees that neither it nor any assignee will grant to any person the exclusive right to use or sell any subject invention

in the United States unless such person agrees that any products embodying the subject invention will be manufactured substantially in the United States. However, in individual cases, the requirement for such an agreement may be waived by DOE upon a showing by the Contractor or its assignee that reasonable but unsuccessful efforts have been made to grant licenses on similar terms to potential licensees that would be likely to manufacture substantially in the United States or that under the circumstances domestic manufacture is not commercially feasible.

(j) March-in rights.

The Contractor agrees that with respect to any subject invention in which it has acquired title, DOE has the right in accordance with the procedures in 48 CFR 27.304-1(g) to require the Contractor, an assignee, or exclusive licensee of a subject invention to grant a nonexclusive, partially exclusive, or exclusive license in any field of use to a responsible applicant or applicants, upon terms that are reasonable under the circumstances, and if the Contractor, assignee, or exclusive licensee refuses such a request, DOE has the right to grant such a license itself if DOE determines that--

(1) Such action is necessary because the Contractor or assignee has not taken, or is not expected to take within a reasonable time, effective steps to achieve practical application of the subject invention in such field of use;

(2) Such action is necessary to alleviate health or safety needs which are not reasonably satisfied by the Contractor, assignee, or their licensees;

(3) Such action is necessary to meet requirements for public use specified by Federal regulations and such requirements are not reasonably satisfied by the Contractor, assignee, or licensees; or

(4) Such action is necessary because the agreement required by paragraph (i) of this clause has not been obtained or waived or because a licensee of the exclusive right to use or sell any subject invention in the United States is in breach of such agreement.

(k) Background Patents [reserved]

(l) Communications.

All reports and notifications required by this clause shall be submitted to the Patent Counsel unless otherwise instructed.

(m) Other inventions.

Nothing contained in this clause shall be deemed to grant to the Government any rights with respect to any invention other than a subject invention, except with respect to Background Patents, above.

(n) Examination of records relating to inventions.

(1) The Contracting Officer or any authorized representative shall, until 3 years after final payment under this contract, have the right to examine any books (including laboratory notebooks), records, and documents of the Contractor relating to the conception or first actual reduction to practice of inventions in the same field of technology as the work under this contract to determine whether--

(i) Any such inventions are subject inventions;

(ii) The Contractor has established and maintains the procedures required by paragraphs (f)(2) and (f)(5) of this clause; and

(iii) The Contractor and its inventor have complied with the procedures.

(2) If the Contracting Officer determines that an inventor has not disclosed a subject invention to the Contractor in accordance with the procedures required by paragraph (f)(5) of this clause, the Contracting Officer may, within 60 days after the determination, request title in accordance with paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this clause. However, if the Contractor establishes that the failure to disclose did not result from the Contractor's fault or negligence, the Contracting Officer shall not request title.

(3) If the Contracting Officer learns of an unreported Contractor invention which the Contracting Officer believes may be a subject invention, the Contractor may be required to disclose the invention to DOE for a determination of ownership rights.

(4) Any examination of records under this paragraph shall be conducted in such a manner as to protect the confidentiality of the information involved.

(o) Withholding of payment.

NOTE: This paragraph does not apply to subcontracts or grants.

(1) Any time before final payment under this contract, the Contracting Officer may, in the Government's interest, withhold payment until a reserve not exceeding \$50,000 or 5 percent of the amount of the contract, whichever is less, shall have been set aside if, in the Contracting Officer's opinion, the Contractor fails to--

(i) Establish, maintain, and follow effective procedures for identifying and disclosing subject inventions pursuant to paragraph (f)(5) of this clause;

(ii) Disclose any subject invention pursuant to paragraph (c)(1) of this clause;

(iii) Deliver acceptable interim reports pursuant to paragraph (f)(7)(I) of this clause;

(iv) Provide the information regarding subcontracts pursuant to paragraph (f)(6) of this clause; or

(v) Convey to the Government, using a DOE-approved form, the title and/or rights of the Government in each subject invention as required by this clause.



(2) Such reserve or balance shall be withheld until the Contracting Officer has determined that the Contractor has rectified whatever deficiencies exist and has delivered all reports, disclosures, and other information required by this clause.

(3) Final payment under this contract shall not be made before the Contractor delivers to the Patent Counsel all disclosures of subject inventions required by paragraph (c)(1) of this clause, an acceptable final report pursuant to paragraph (f)(7)(ii) of this clause, and all past due confirmatory instruments, and the Patent Counsel has issued a patent clearance certification to the Contracting Officer.

(4) The Contracting Officer may decrease or increase the sums withheld up to the maximum authorized above. If the maximum amount authorized above is already being withheld under other provisions of the contract, no additional amount shall be withheld under this paragraph. The withholding of any amount or the subsequent payment thereof shall not be construed as a waiver of any Government right.

(p) Waiver Terminations.

Any waiver granted to the Contractor authorizing the use of this clause (including any retention of rights pursuant thereto by the Contractor under paragraph (b) of this clause) may be terminated at the discretion of the Secretary or his designee in whole or in part, if the request for waiver by the Contractor is found to contain false material statements or nondisclosure of material facts, and such were specifically relied upon by DOE in reaching the waiver determination or the cost share requirement as set forth in the applicable statement of considerations is not met. Prior to any such termination, the Contractor will be given written notice stating the extent of such proposed termination and the reasons therefor, and a period of 30 days, or such longer period as the Secretary or his designee shall determine for good cause shown in writing, to show cause why the waiver of rights should not be so terminated. Any waiver termination shall be subject to the Contractor's minimum license as provided in paragraph (e) of this clause.

(q) Atomic Energy.

No claim for pecuniary award or compensation under the provisions of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, shall be asserted by the Contractor or its employees with respect to any invention or discovery made or conceived in the course of or under this contract.

(r) Publication.

It is recognized that during the course of work under this contract, the contractor or its employees may from time to time desire to release or publish information regarding scientific or technical developments conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under this contract. In order that public disclosure of such information will not adversely affect the patent interests of DOE or the contractor, approval for release of publication shall be

secured from Patent Counsel prior to any such release or publication. In appropriate circumstances, and after consultation with the contractor, Patent Counsel may waive the right of prepublication review.

(s) Forfeiture of rights in unreported subject inventions.

(1) The contractor shall forfeit and assign to the Government, at the request of the Secretary of Energy or designee, all rights in any subject invention which the contractor fails to report to Patent Counsel within six months after the time the contractor:

- (i) Files or causes to be filed a United States or foreign patent application thereon; or
- (ii) Submits the final report required by paragraph (f)(7)(ii) of this clause, whichever is later.

(2) However, the Contractor shall not forfeit rights in a subject invention if, within the time specified in paragraph (n)(1) of this clause, the contractor:

- (i) Prepares a written decision based upon a review of the record that the invention was neither conceived nor first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under the contract and delivers the decision to Patent Counsel, with a copy to the Contracting Officer; or
- (ii) Contending that the subject invention is not a subject invention, the contractor nevertheless discloses the subject invention and all facts pertinent to this contention to the Patent Counsel, with a copy to the Contracting Officer, or
- (iii) Establishes that the failure to disclose did not result from the contractor's fault or negligence.

(3) Pending written assignment of the patent application and patents on a subject invention determined by the Contracting Officer to be forfeited (such determination to be a Final Decision under the Disputes clause of this contract), the contractor shall be deemed to hold the invention and the patent applications and patents pertaining thereto in trust for the Government. The forfeiture provision of this paragraph shall be in addition to and shall not supersede any other rights and remedies which the Government may have with respect to subject inventions.

(t) U. S. Competitiveness

The Contractor agrees that any products embodying any waived invention or produced through the use of any waived invention will be manufactured substantially in the United States, unless the Contractor can show to the satisfaction of DOE that it is not commercially feasible to do so. In the event DOE agrees to foreign manufacture, there will be a requirement that the Government's support of the technology be recognized in some appropriate manner, e.g., recoupment of the Government's investment, etc. The Contractor further agrees to make the above condition binding on any assignee or licensee or any entity otherwise acquiring rights to any waived invention, including subsequent assignees or licensees. Should the Contractor or other such entity receiving rights in any waived invention undergo a change in ownership

amounting to a controlling interest, then the waiver, assignment, license, or other transfer of rights in any waived invention is suspended until approved in writing by DOE.

(End of clause)



## Cooperative Agreement - Special Data Statute Research, Development, or Demonstration Large Business and Foreign Entity

01. [FAR 52.227-1](#) Authorization and Consent (DEC 2007)  
Alternate I (APR 1984)
02. [FAR 52.227-2](#) Notice and Assistance Regarding Patent and Copyright  
Infringement (DEC 2007)
03. [2 CFR 910](#) Rights in Data – Programs Covered under Special Data  
Appendix A of Subpart D Statutes
04. [2 CFR 910](#) Patent Rights (Large Business Firms – No Waiver)  
Appendix A of Subpart D

NOTE: In reading these provisions, any reference to “contractor” shall mean “recipient,” and any reference to “contract” or “subcontract” shall mean “award” or “subaward.”

## **01. FAR 52.227-1 Authorization and Consent (DEC 2007) Alternate I (APR 1984)**

(a) The Government authorizes and consents to all use and manufacture of any invention described in and covered by a United States patent in the performance of this contract or any subcontract at any tier.

(b) The Contractor shall include the substance of this clause, including this paragraph (b), in all subcontracts that are expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold. However, omission of this clause from any subcontract, including those at or below the simplified acquisition threshold, does not affect this authorization and consent.

(End of clause)

## **02. FAR 52.227-2 Notice and Assistance Regarding Patent and Copyright Infringement (DEC 2007)**

(a) The Contractor shall report to the Contracting Officer, promptly and in reasonable written detail, each notice or claim of patent or copyright infringement based on the performance of this contract of which the Contractor has knowledge.

(b) In the event of any claim or suit against the Government on account of any alleged patent or copyright infringement arising out of the performance of this contract or out of the use of any supplies furnished or work or services performed under this contract, the Contractor shall furnish to the Government, when requested by the Contracting Officer, all evidence and information in the Contractor's possession pertaining to such claim or suit. Such evidence and information shall be furnished at the expense of the Government except where the Contractor has agreed to indemnify the Government.

(c) The Contractor shall include the substance of this clause, including this paragraph (c), in all subcontracts that are expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold.

(End of clause)

## **03. 2 CFR 910, Appendix A of Subpart D, Rights in Data - Programs Covered Under Special Data Statutes**

(a) Definitions

Computer Data Bases, as used in this clause, means a collection of data in a form capable of, and for the purpose of, being stored in, processed, and operated on by a computer. The term does not include computer software.

Computer software, as used in this clause, means

(i) computer programs which are data comprising a series of instructions, rules, routines, or statements, regardless of the media in which recorded, that allow or cause a computer to perform a specific operation or series of operations and

(ii) data comprising source code listings, design details, algorithms, processes, flow charts, formulae and related material that would enable the computer program to be produced, created or compiled. The term does not include computer data bases.

Data, as used in this clause, means recorded information, regardless of form or the media on which it may be recorded. The term includes technical data and computer software. The term does not include information incidental to administration, such as financial, administrative, cost or pricing or management information.

Form, fit, and function data, as used in this clause, means data relating to items, components, or processes that are sufficient to enable physical and functional interchangeability as well as data identifying source, size, configuration, mating and attachment characteristics, functional characteristics, and performance requirements except that for computer software it means data identifying source, functional characteristics, and performance requirements but specifically excludes the source code, algorithm, process, formulae, and flow charts of the software.

Limited rights data, as used in this clause, means data (other than computer software) developed at private expense that embody trade secrets or are commercial or financial and confidential or privileged.

Restricted computer software, as used in this clause, means computer software developed at private expense and that is a trade secret; is commercial or financial and confidential or privileged; or is published copyrighted computer software; including modifications of such computer software.

Protected data, as used in this clause, means technical data or commercial or financial data first produced in the performance of the award which, if it had been obtained from and first produced by a non-federal party, would be a trade secret or commercial or financial information that is privileged or confidential under the meaning of 5 U.S.C. 552(b)(4) and which data is marked as being protected data by a party to the award.

Protected rights, as used in this clause, mean the rights in protected data set forth in the Protected Rights Notice of paragraph (g) of this clause.

Technical data, as used in this clause, means that data which are of a scientific or technical nature. Technical data does not include computer software, but does include manuals and instructional materials and technical data formatted as a computer data base.

Unlimited rights, as used in this clause, means the right of the Government to use, disclose, reproduce, prepare derivative works, distribute copies to the public, and perform publicly and display publicly, in any manner and for any purpose whatsoever, and to have or permit others to do so.

(b) Allocation of Rights

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this clause regarding copyright, the Government shall have unlimited rights in—

(i) Data specifically identified in this agreement as data to be delivered without restriction;

(ii) Form, fit, and function data delivered under this agreement;

(iii) Data delivered under this agreement (except for restricted computer software) that constitute manuals or instructional and training material for installation, operation, or routine maintenance and repair of items, components, or processes delivered or furnished for use under this agreement; and

(iv) All other data delivered under this agreement unless provided otherwise for protected data in accordance with paragraph (g) of this clause or for limited rights data or restricted computer software in accordance with paragraph (h) of this clause.

(2) The Recipient shall have the right to—

(i) Protect rights in protected data delivered under this agreement in the manner and to the extent provided in paragraph (g) of this clause;

(ii) Withhold from delivery those data which are limited rights data or restricted computer software to the extent provided in paragraph (h) of this clause;

(iii) Substantiate use of, add, or correct protected rights or copyrights notices and to take other appropriate action, in accordance with paragraph (e) of this clause; and

(iv) Establish claim to copyright subsisting in data first produced in the performance of this agreement to the extent provided in paragraph (c)(1) of this clause.

(c) Copyright

(1) Data first produced in the performance of this agreement. Except as otherwise specifically provided in this agreement, the Recipient may establish, without the prior approval of the Contracting Officer, claim to copyright subsisting in any data first produced in the performance of this agreement. If claim to copyright is made, the Recipient shall affix the applicable copyright notice of 17 U.S.C. 401 or 402 and acknowledgment of Government sponsorship

(including agreement number) to the data when such data are delivered to the Government, as well as when the data are published or deposited for registration as a published work in the U.S. Copyright Office. For such copyrighted data, including computer software, the Recipient grants to the Government, and others acting on its behalf, a paid-up nonexclusive, irrevocable, worldwide license to reproduce, prepare derivative works, distribute copies to the public, and perform publicly and display publicly, by or on behalf of the Government, for all such data.

(2) Data not first produced in the performance of this agreement. The Recipient shall not, without prior written permission of the Contracting Officer, incorporate in data delivered under this agreement any data that are not first produced in the performance of this agreement and that contain the copyright notice of 17 U.S.C. 401 or 402, unless the Recipient identifies such data and grants to the Government, or acquires on its behalf, a license of the same scope as set forth in paragraph (c)(1) of this clause; provided, however, that if such data are computer software, the Government shall acquire a copyright license as set forth in paragraph (h)(3) of this clause if included in this agreement or as otherwise may be provided in a collateral agreement incorporated or made a part of this agreement.

(3) Removal of copyright notices. The Government agrees not to remove any copyright notices placed on data pursuant to this paragraph (c), and to include such notices on all reproductions of the data.

(d) Release, Publication and Use of Data

(1) The Receipt shall have the right to use, release to others, reproduce, distribute, or publish any data first produced or specifically used by the Recipient in the performance of this contract, except to the extent such data may be subject to the Federal export control or national security laws or regulations, or unless otherwise provided in this paragraph of this clause or expressly set forth in this contract.

(2) The Recipient agrees that to the extent it receives or is given access to data necessary for the performance of this agreement which contain restrictive markings, the Recipient shall treat the data in accordance with such markings unless otherwise specifically authorized in writing by the Contracting Officer.

(e) Unauthorized Marking of Data

(1) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this agreement concerning inspection or acceptance, if any data delivered under this agreement are marked with the notices specified in paragraph (g)(2) or (g)(3) of this clause and use of such is not authorized by this clause, or if such data bears any other restrictive or limiting markings not authorized by this agreement, the Contracting Officer may at any time either return the data to the Recipient or cancel or ignore the markings. However, the following procedures shall apply prior to canceling or ignoring the markings.



(i) The Contracting Officer shall make written inquiry to the Recipient affording the Recipient 30 days from receipt of the inquiry to provide written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings;

(ii) If the Recipient fails to respond or fails to provide written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings within the 30-day period (or a longer time not exceeding 90 days approved in writing by the Contracting Officer for good cause shown), the Government shall have the right to cancel or ignore the markings at any time after said period and the data will no longer be made subject to any disclosure prohibitions.

(iii) If the Recipient provides written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings within the period set in subdivision (e)(1)(i) of this clause, the Contracting Officer shall consider such written justification and determine whether or not the markings are to be cancelled or ignored. If the Contracting Officer determines that the markings are authorized, the Recipient shall be so notified in writing. If the Contracting Officer determines, with concurrence of the head of the contracting activity, that the markings are not authorized, the Contracting Officer shall furnish the Recipient a written determination, which determination shall become the final agency decision regarding the appropriateness of the markings unless the Recipient files suit in a court of competent jurisdiction within 90 days of receipt of the Contracting Officer's decision. The Government shall continue to abide by the markings under this subdivision (e)(1)(iii) until final resolution of the matter either by the Contracting Officer's determination become final (in which instance the Government shall thereafter have the right to cancel or ignore the markings at any time and the data will no longer be made subject to any disclosure prohibitions), or by final disposition of the matter by court decision if suit is filed.

(2) The time limits in the procedures set forth in paragraph (e)(1) of this clause may be modified in accordance with agency regulations implementing the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) if necessary to respond to a request thereunder.

(f) Omitted or Incorrect Markings

(1) Data delivered to the Government without either the limited rights or restricted rights notice as authorized by paragraph (g) of this clause, or the copyright notice required by paragraph (c) of this clause, shall be deemed to have been furnished with unlimited rights, and the Government assumes no liability for the disclosure, use, or reproduction of such data. However, to the extent the data has not been disclosed without restriction outside the Government, the Recipient may request, within 6 months (or a longer time approved by the Contracting Officer for good cause shown) after delivery of such data, permission to have notices placed on qualifying data at the Recipient's expense, and the Contracting Officer may agree to do so if the Recipient—

(i) Identifies the data to which the omitted notice is to be applied;

(ii) Demonstrates that the omission of the notice was inadvertent;

(iii) Establishes that the use of the proposed notice is authorized; and

(iv) Acknowledges that the Government has no liability with respect to the disclosure, use, or reproduction of any such data made prior to the addition of the notice or resulting from the omission of the notice.

(2) The Contracting Officer may also:

(i) Permit correction at the Recipient's expense of incorrect notices if the Recipient identifies the data on which correction of the notice is to be made, and demonstrates that the correct notice is authorized; or

(ii) Correct any incorrect notices.

(g) Rights to Protected Data

(1) The Recipient may, with the concurrence of DOE, claim and mark as protected data, any data first produced in the performance of this award that would have been treated as a trade secret if developed at private expense. Any such claimed "protected data" will be clearly marked with the following Protected Rights Notice, and will be treated in accordance with such Notice, subject to the provisions of paragraphs (e) and (f) of this clause.

#### Protected Rights Notice

These protected data were produced under agreement no. [Enter Agreement No.] with the U.S. Department of Energy and may not be published, disseminated, or disclosed to others outside the Government until (Note:) The period of protection of such data is fully negotiable, but cannot exceed the applicable statutorily authorized maximum), unless express written authorization is obtained from the recipient. Upon expiration of the period of protection set forth in this Notice, the Government shall have unlimited rights in this data. This Notice shall be marked on any reproduction of this data, in whole or in part.

(End of notice)

(2) Any such marked Protected Data may be disclosed under obligations of confidentiality for the following purposes:

(a) For evaluation purposes under the restriction that the "Protected Data" be retained in confidence and not be further disclosed; or

(b) To subcontractors or other team members performing work under the Government's (insert name of program or other applicable activity) program of which this award is a part, for information or use in connection with the work performed under their activity, and under the restriction that the Protected Data be retained in confidence and not be further disclosed.

(3) The obligations of confidentiality and restrictions on publication and dissemination shall end for any Protected Data:

(a) At the end of the protected period;

(b) If the data becomes publicly known or available from other sources without a breach of the obligation of confidentiality with respect to the Protected Data;

(c) If the same data is independently developed by someone who did not have access to the Protected Data and such data is made available without obligations of confidentiality; or

(d) If the Recipient disseminates or authorizes another to disseminate such data without obligations of confidentiality.

(4) However, the Recipient agrees that the following types of data are not considered to be protected and shall be provided to the Government when required by this award without any claim that the data are Protected Data. The parties agree that notwithstanding the following lists of types of data, nothing precludes the Government from seeking delivery of additional data in accordance with this award, or from making publicly available additional non-protected data, nor does the following list constitute any admission by the Government that technical data not on the list is Protected Data. (Note: It is expected that this paragraph will specify certain types of mutually agreed upon data that will be available to the public and will not be asserted by the recipient/contractor as limited rights or protected data).

(5) The Government's sole obligation with respect to any protected data shall be as set forth in this paragraph (g).

(h) Protection of Limited Rights Data

When data other than that listed in paragraphs (b)(1)(i), (ii), and (iii) of this clause are specified to be delivered under this agreement and such data qualify as either limited rights data or restricted computer software, the Recipient, if the Recipient desires to continue protection of such data, shall withhold such data and not furnish them to the Government under this agreement. As a condition to this withholding the Recipient shall identify the data being withheld and furnish form, fit, and function data in lieu thereof.

(i) Subaward/Contract

The Recipient has the responsibility to obtain from its subrecipients/contractors all data and rights therein necessary to fulfill the Recipient's obligations to the Government under this agreement. If a subrecipient/contractor refuses to accept terms affording the Government such rights, the Recipient shall promptly bring such refusal to the attention of the Contracting Officer and not proceed with subaward/contract award without further authorization.

(j) Additional Data Requirements

In addition to the data specified elsewhere in this agreement to be delivered, the Contracting Officer may, at any time during agreement performance or within a period of 3 years after acceptance of all items to be delivered under this agreement, order any data first produced or specifically used in the performance of this agreement. This clause is applicable to all data ordered under this subparagraph. Nothing contained in this subparagraph shall require the Recipient to deliver any data the withholding of which is authorized by this clause or data which are specifically identified in this agreement as not subject to this clause. When data are to be delivered under this subparagraph, the Recipient will be compensated for converting the data into the prescribed form, for reproduction, and for delivery.

(k) The Recipient agrees, except as may be otherwise specified in this agreement for specific data items listed as not subject to this paragraph, that the Contracting Officer or an authorized representative may, up to three years after acceptance of all items to be delivered under this contract, inspect at the Recipient's facility any data withheld pursuant to paragraph (h) of this clause, for purposes of verifying the Recipient's assertion pertaining to the limited rights or restricted rights status of the data or for evaluating work performance. Where the Recipient whose data are to be inspected demonstrates to the Contracting Officer that there would be a possible conflict of interest if the inspection were made by a particular representative, the Contracting Officer shall designate an alternate inspector.  
(End of clause)

**04. 2 CFR 910, Appendix A of Subpart D, Patent Rights - (Large Business Firms - No Waiver)**

(a) Definitions

*DOE patent waiver regulations*, as used in this clause, means the Department of Energy patent waiver regulations in effect on the date of award. See 10 CFR part 784.

*Invention*, as used in this clause, means any invention or discovery which is or may be patentable or otherwise protectable under title 35 of the United States Code or any novel variety of plant that is or may be protectable under the Plant Variety Protection Act (7 U.S.C. 2321, *et seq.*).

*Patent Counsel*, as used in this clause, means the Department of Energy Patent Counsel assisting the awarding activity.

*Subject invention*, as used in this clause, means any invention of the Recipient conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under this agreement.

(b) Allocations of Principal Rights

(1) Assignment to the Government. The Recipient agrees to assign to the Government the entire right, title, and interest throughout the world in and to each subject invention, except to the extent that rights are retained by the Recipient under subparagraph (b)(2) and paragraph (d) of this clause.

(2) Greater rights determinations. The Recipient, or an employee-inventor after consultation with the Recipient, may request greater rights than the nonexclusive license and the foreign patent rights provided in paragraph (d) of this clause on identified inventions in accordance with the DOE patent waiver regulation. Each determination of greater rights under this agreement shall be subject to paragraph (c) of this clause, unless otherwise provided in the greater rights determination, and to the reservations and conditions deemed to be appropriate by the Secretary of Energy or designee.

(c) Minimum Rights Acquired by the Government

With respect to each subject invention to which the Department of Energy grants the Recipient principal or exclusive rights, the Recipient agrees to grant to the Government: A nonexclusive, nontransferable, irrevocable, paid-up license to practice or have practiced each subject invention throughout the world by or on behalf of the Government of the United States (including any Government agency); “march-in rights” as set forth in 37 CFR 401.14(a)(J); preference for U.S. industry as set forth in 37 CFR 401.14(a)(I); periodic reports upon request, no more frequently than annually, on the utilization or intent of utilization of a subject invention in a manner consistent with 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(50); and such Government rights in any instrument transferring rights in a subject invention.

(d) Minimum Rights to the Recipient

(1) The Recipient is hereby granted a revocable, nonexclusive, royalty-free license in each patent application filed in any country on a subject invention and any resulting patent in which the Government obtains title, unless the Recipient fails to disclose the subject invention within the times specified in subparagraph (e)(2) of this clause. The Recipient's license extends to its domestic subsidiaries and affiliates, if any, within the corporate structure of which the Recipient is a part and includes the right to grant sublicenses of the same scope to the extent the Recipient was legally obligated to do so at the time the agreement was awarded. The license is transferable only with the approval of DOE except when transferred to the successor of that part of the Recipient's business to which the invention pertains.

(2) The Recipient may request the right to acquire patent rights to a subject invention in any foreign country where the Government has elected not to secure such rights, subject to the minimum rights acquired by the Government similar to paragraph (c) of this clause. Such request must be made in writing to the Patent Counsel as part of the disclosure required by subparagraph (e)(2) of this clause, with a copy to the DOE Contracting Officer. DOE approval, if given, will be based on a determination that this would best serve the national interest.

(e) Invention Identification, Disclosures, and Reports

(1) The Recipient shall establish and maintain active and effective procedures to assure that subject inventions are promptly identified and disclosed to Recipient personnel responsible for patent matters within 6 months of conception and/or first actual reduction to practice, whichever occurs first in the performance of work under this agreement. These procedures shall include the maintenance of laboratory notebooks or equivalent records and other records as are reasonably necessary to document the conception and/or the first actual reduction to practice of subject inventions, and records that show that the procedures for identifying and disclosing the inventions are followed. Upon request, the Recipient shall furnish the Contracting Officer a description of such procedures for evaluation and for determination as to their effectiveness.

(2) The Recipient shall disclose each subject invention to the DOE Patent Counsel with a copy to the Contracting Officer within 2 months after the inventor discloses it in writing to Recipient personnel responsible for patent matters or, if earlier, within 6 months after the Recipient becomes aware that a subject invention has been made, but in any event before any on sale, public use, or publication of such invention known to the Recipient. The disclosure to DOE shall be in the form of a written report and shall identify the agreement under which the invention was made and the inventor(s). It shall be sufficiently complete in technical detail to convey a clear understanding, to the extent known at the time of the disclosure, of the nature, purpose, operation, and physical, chemical, biological, or electrical characteristics of the invention. The disclosure shall also identify any publication, on sale, or public use of the invention and whether a manuscript describing the invention has been submitted for publication and, if so, whether it has been accepted for publication at the time of disclosure. In addition, after disclosure to DOE, the Recipient shall promptly notify Patent Counsel of the acceptance of any manuscript describing the invention for publication or of any on sale or public use planned by the Recipient. The report should also include any request for a greater rights determination in accordance with subparagraph (b)(2) of this clause. When an invention is disclosed to DOE under this paragraph, it shall be deemed to have been made in the manner specified in Sections (a)(1) and (a)(2) of 42 U.S.C. 5908, unless the Recipient contends in writing at the time the invention is disclosed that it was not so made.

(3) The Recipient shall furnish the Contracting Officer a final report, within 3 months after completion of the work listing all subject inventions or containing a statement that there were no such inventions, and listing all subawards/contracts at any tier containing a patent rights clause or containing a statement that there were no such subawards/contracts.

(4) The Recipient agrees to require, by written agreement, its employees, other than clerical and nontechnical employees, to disclose promptly in writing to personnel identified as responsible for the administration of patent matters and in a format suggested by the Recipient each subject invention made under subaward/contract in order that the Recipient can comply with the disclosure provisions of paragraph (c) of this clause, and to execute all papers necessary to file patent applications on subject inventions and to establish the Government's

rights in the subject inventions. This disclosure format should require, as a minimum, the information required by subparagraph (e)(2) of this clause.

(5) The Recipient agrees, subject to FAR 27.302(j), that the Government may duplicate and disclose subject invention disclosures and all other reports and papers furnished or required to be furnished pursuant to this clause.

(f) Examination of Records Relating to Inventions

(1) The Contracting Officer or any authorized representative shall, until 3 years after final payment under this agreement, have the right to examine any books (including laboratory notebooks), records, and documents of the Recipient relating to the conception or first actual reduction to practice of inventions in the same field of technology as the work under this agreement to determine whether—(i) Any such inventions are subject inventions; (ii) The Recipient has established and maintains the procedures required by subparagraphs (e)(1) and (4) of this clause; (iii) The Recipient and its inventors have complied with the procedures.

(2) If the Contracting Officer learns of an unreported Recipient invention which the Contracting Officer believes may be a subject invention, the Recipient may be required to disclose the invention to DOE for a determination of ownership rights.

(3) Any examination of records under this paragraph will be subject to appropriate conditions to protect the confidentiality of the information involved.

(g) Subaward/Contract

(1) The recipient shall include the clause PATENT RIGHTS (SMALL BUSINESS FIRMS AND NONPROFIT ORGANIZATIONS) (suitably modified to identify the parties) in all subawards/contracts, regardless of tier, for experimental, developmental, demonstration, or research work to be performed by a small business firm or domestic nonprofit organization, except where the work of the subaward/contract is subject to an Exceptional Circumstances Determination by DOE. In all other subawards/contracts, regardless of tier, for experimental, developmental, demonstration, or research work, the Recipient shall include this clause (suitably modified to identify the parties), or an alternate clause as directed by the contracting officer. The Recipient shall not, as part of the consideration for awarding the subaward/contract, obtain rights in the subrecipient's/contractor's subject inventions.

(2) In the event of a refusal by a prospective subrecipient/contractor to accept such a clause the Recipient: (i) Shall promptly submit a written notice to the Contracting Officer setting forth the subrecipient/contractor's reasons for such refusal and other pertinent information that may expedite disposition of the matter; and (ii) Shall not proceed with such subaward/contract without the written authorization of the Contracting Officer.

(3) In the case of subawards/contracts at any tier, DOE, the subrecipient/contractor, and Recipient agree that the mutual obligations of the parties created by this clause constitute a contract between the subrecipient/contractor and DOE with respect to those matters covered by this clause.

(4) The Recipient shall promptly notify the Contracting Officer in writing upon the award of any subaward/contract at any tier containing a patent rights clause by identifying the subrecipient/contractor, the applicable patent rights clause, the work to be performed under the subaward/contract, and the dates of award and estimated completion. Upon request of the Contracting Officer, the Recipient shall furnish a copy of such subaward/contract, and, no more frequently than annually, a listing of the subawards/contracts that have been awarded.

(5) The Recipient shall identify all subject inventions of a subrecipient/contractor of which it acquires knowledge in the performance of this agreement and shall notify the Patent Counsel, with a copy to the contracting officer, promptly upon identification of the inventions.

(h) Atomic Energy

(1) No claim for pecuniary award of compensation under the provisions of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, shall be asserted with respect to any invention or discovery made or conceived in the course of or under this agreement.

(2) Except as otherwise authorized in writing by the Contracting Officer, the Recipient will obtain patent agreements to effectuate the provisions of subparagraph (h)(1) of this clause from all persons who perform any part of the work under this agreement, except nontechnical personnel, such as clerical employees and manual laborers.

(i) Publication

It is recognized that during the course of the work under this agreement, the Recipient or its employees may from time to time desire to release or publish information regarding scientific or technical developments conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under this agreement. In order that public disclosure of such information will not adversely affect the patent interests of DOE or the Recipient, patent approval for release of publication shall be secured from Patent Counsel prior to any such release or publication.

(j) Forfeiture of Rights in Unreported Subject Inventions

(1) The Recipient shall forfeit and assign to the Government, at the request of the Secretary of Energy or designee, all rights in any subject invention which the Recipient fails to report to Patent Counsel within six months after the time the Recipient: (i) Files or causes to be filed a United States or foreign patent application thereon; or (ii) Submits the final report required by subparagraph (e)(3) of this clause, whichever is later.



(2) However, the Recipient shall not forfeit rights in a subject invention if, within the time specified in subparagraph (e)(2) of this clause, the Recipient: (i) Prepares a written decision based upon a review of the record that the invention was neither conceived nor first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under the agreement and delivers the decision to Patent Counsel, with a copy to the Contracting Officer, or (ii) Contending that the invention is not a subject invention, the Recipient nevertheless discloses the invention and all facts pertinent to this contention to the Patent Counsel, with a copy of the Contracting Officer; or (iii) Establishes that the failure to disclose did not result from the Recipient's fault or negligence.

(3) Pending written assignment of the patent application and patents on a subject invention determined by the Secretary of Energy or designee to be forfeited (such determination to be a final decision under the Disputes clause of this agreement), the Recipient shall be deemed to hold the invention and the patent applications and patents pertaining thereto in trust for the Government. The forfeiture provision of this paragraph (j) shall be in addition to and shall not supersede other rights and remedies which the Government may have with respect to subject inventions.

(End of clause)



## **Cooperative Agreement – Special Data Statute Research, Development, or Demonstration Domestic Large Business**

01. [FAR 52.227-1](#) Authorization and Consent (DEC 2007)  
Alternate I (APR 1984)
02. [FAR 52.227-2](#) Notice and Assistance Regarding Patent and Copyright  
Infringement (DEC 2007)
03. [2 CFR 910](#) Rights in Data – Programs Covered under Special Data  
Appendix A of Subpart D Statutes
04. [W\(C\) 2014-003](#) Patent Rights – Waiver (JUL 1996)  
Class Patent Waiver

NOTE: In reading these provisions, any reference to “contractor” shall mean “recipient,” and any reference to “contract” or “subcontract” shall mean “award” or “subaward.”

### **01. FAR 52.227-1 Authorization and Consent (DEC 2007) Alternate I (APR 1984)**

(a) The Government authorizes and consents to all use and manufacture of any invention described in and covered by a United States patent in the performance of this contract or any subcontract at any tier.

(b) The Contractor shall include the substance of this clause, including this paragraph (b), in all subcontracts that are expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold. However, omission of this clause from any subcontract, including those at or below the simplified acquisition threshold, does not affect this authorization and consent.

(End of clause)

### **02. FAR 52.227-2 Notice and Assistance Regarding Patent and Copyright Infringement (DEC 2007)**

(a) The Contractor shall report to the Contracting Officer, promptly and in reasonable written detail, each notice or claim of patent or copyright infringement based on the performance of this contract of which the Contractor has knowledge.

(b) In the event of any claim or suit against the Government on account of any alleged patent or copyright infringement arising out of the performance of this contract or out of the use of any supplies furnished or work or services performed under this contract, the Contractor shall furnish to the Government, when requested by the Contracting Officer, all evidence and information in the Contractor's possession pertaining to such claim or suit. Such evidence and information shall be furnished at the expense of the Government except where the Contractor has agreed to indemnify the Government.

(c) The Contractor shall include the substance of this clause, including this paragraph (c), in all subcontracts that are expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold.

(End of clause)

### **03. 2 CFR 910, Appendix A of Subpart D, Rights in Data - Programs Covered Under Special Data Statutes**

(a) Definitions

Computer Data Bases, as used in this clause, means a collection of data in a form capable of, and for the purpose of, being stored in, processed, and operated on by a computer. The term does not include computer software.

Computer software, as used in this clause, means

(i) computer programs which are data comprising a series of instructions, rules, routines, or statements, regardless of the media in which recorded, that allow or cause a computer to perform a specific operation or series of operations and

(ii) data comprising source code listings, design details, algorithms, processes, flow charts, formulae and related material that would enable the computer program to be produced, created or compiled. The term does not include computer data bases.

Data, as used in this clause, means recorded information, regardless of form or the media on which it may be recorded. The term includes technical data and computer software. The term does not include information incidental to administration, such as financial, administrative, cost or pricing or management information.

Form, fit, and function data, as used in this clause, means data relating to items, components, or processes that are sufficient to enable physical and functional interchangeability as well as data identifying source, size, configuration, mating and attachment characteristics, functional characteristics, and performance requirements except that for computer software it means data identifying source, functional characteristics, and performance requirements but specifically excludes the source code, algorithm, process, formulae, and flow charts of the software.

Limited rights data, as used in this clause, means data (other than computer software) developed at private expense that embody trade secrets or are commercial or financial and confidential or privileged.

Restricted computer software, as used in this clause, means computer software developed at private expense and that is a trade secret; is commercial or financial and confidential or privileged; or is published copyrighted computer software; including modifications of such computer software.

Protected data, as used in this clause, means technical data or commercial or financial data first produced in the performance of the award which, if it had been obtained from and first produced by a non-federal party, would be a trade secret or commercial or financial information that is privileged or confidential under the meaning of 5 U.S.C. 552(b)(4) and which data is marked as being protected data by a party to the award.

Protected rights, as used in this clause, mean the rights in protected data set forth in the Protected Rights Notice of paragraph (g) of this clause.

Technical data, as used in this clause, means that data which are of a scientific or technical nature. Technical data does not include computer software, but does include manuals and instructional materials and technical data formatted as a computer data base.

Unlimited rights, as used in this clause, means the right of the Government to use, disclose, reproduce, prepare derivative works, distribute copies to the public, and perform publicly and display publicly, in any manner and for any purpose whatsoever, and to have or permit others to do so.

(b) Allocation of Rights

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this clause regarding copyright, the Government shall have unlimited rights in—

(i) Data specifically identified in this agreement as data to be delivered without restriction;

(ii) Form, fit, and function data delivered under this agreement;

(iii) Data delivered under this agreement (except for restricted computer software) that constitute manuals or instructional and training material for installation, operation, or routine maintenance and repair of items, components, or processes delivered or furnished for use under this agreement; and

(iv) All other data delivered under this agreement unless provided otherwise for protected data in accordance with paragraph (g) of this clause or for limited rights data or restricted computer software in accordance with paragraph (h) of this clause.

(2) The Recipient shall have the right to—

(i) Protect rights in protected data delivered under this agreement in the manner and to the extent provided in paragraph (g) of this clause;

(ii) Withhold from delivery those data which are limited rights data or restricted computer software to the extent provided in paragraph (h) of this clause;

(iii) Substantiate use of, add, or correct protected rights or copyrights notices and to take other appropriate action, in accordance with paragraph (e) of this clause; and

(iv) Establish claim to copyright subsisting in data first produced in the performance of this agreement to the extent provided in paragraph (c)(1) of this clause.

(c) Copyright

(1) Data first produced in the performance of this agreement. Except as otherwise specifically provided in this agreement, the Recipient may establish, without the prior approval of the Contracting Officer, claim to copyright subsisting in any data first produced in the performance of this agreement. If claim to copyright is made, the Recipient shall affix the applicable copyright notice of 17 U.S.C. 401 or 402 and acknowledgment of Government sponsorship (including agreement number) to the data when such data are delivered to the Government, as well as when the data are published or deposited for registration as a published work in the U.S. Copyright Office. For such copyrighted data, including computer software, the Recipient grants to the Government, and others acting on its behalf, a paid-up nonexclusive, irrevocable, worldwide license to reproduce, prepare derivative works, distribute copies to the public, and perform publicly and display publicly, by or on behalf of the Government, for all such data.

(2) Data not first produced in the performance of this agreement. The Recipient shall not, without prior written permission of the Contracting Officer, incorporate in data delivered under this agreement any data that are not first produced in the performance of this agreement and that contain the copyright notice of 17 U.S.C. 401 or 402, unless the Recipient identifies such data and grants to the Government, or acquires on its behalf, a license of the same scope as set forth in paragraph (c)(1) of this clause; provided, however, that if such data are computer software, the Government shall acquire a copyright license as set forth in paragraph (h)(3) of this clause if included in this agreement or as otherwise may be provided in a collateral agreement incorporated or made a part of this agreement.

(3) Removal of copyright notices. The Government agrees not to remove any copyright notices placed on data pursuant to this paragraph (c), and to include such notices on all reproductions of the data.

(d) Release, Publication and Use of Data

(1) The Receipt shall have the right to use, release to others, reproduce, distribute, or publish any data first produced or specifically used by the Recipient in the performance of this contract, except to the extent such data may be subject to the Federal export control or national security laws or regulations, or unless otherwise provided in this paragraph of this clause or expressly set forth in this contract.

(2) The Recipient agrees that to the extent it receives or is given access to data necessary for the performance of this agreement which contain restrictive markings, the Recipient shall treat the data in accordance with such markings unless otherwise specifically authorized in writing by the Contracting Officer.

(e) Unauthorized Marking of Data

(1) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this agreement concerning inspection or acceptance, if any data delivered under this agreement are marked with the notices specified in

paragraph (g)(2) or (g)(3) of this clause and use of such is not authorized by this clause, or if such data bears any other restrictive or limiting markings not authorized by this agreement, the Contracting Officer may at any time either return the data to the Recipient or cancel or ignore the markings. However, the following procedures shall apply prior to canceling or ignoring the markings.

(i) The Contracting Officer shall make written inquiry to the Recipient affording the Recipient 30 days from receipt of the inquiry to provide written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings;

(ii) If the Recipient fails to respond or fails to provide written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings within the 30-day period (or a longer time not exceeding 90 days approved in writing by the Contracting Officer for good cause shown), the Government shall have the right to cancel or ignore the markings at any time after said period and the data will no longer be made subject to any disclosure prohibitions.

(iii) If the Recipient provides written justification to substantiate the propriety of the markings within the period set in subdivision (e)(1)(i) of this clause, the Contracting Officer shall consider such written justification and determine whether or not the markings are to be cancelled or ignored. If the Contracting Officer determines that the markings are authorized, the Recipient shall be so notified in writing. If the Contracting Officer determines, with concurrence of the head of the contracting activity, that the markings are not authorized, the Contracting Officer shall furnish the Recipient a written determination, which determination shall become the final agency decision regarding the appropriateness of the markings unless the Recipient files suit in a court of competent jurisdiction within 90 days of receipt of the Contracting Officer's decision. The Government shall continue to abide by the markings under this subdivision (e)(1)(iii) until final resolution of the matter either by the Contracting Officer's determination become final (in which instance the Government shall thereafter have the right to cancel or ignore the markings at any time and the data will no longer be made subject to any disclosure prohibitions), or by final disposition of the matter by court decision if suit is filed.

(2) The time limits in the procedures set forth in paragraph (e)(1) of this clause may be modified in accordance with agency regulations implementing the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) if necessary to respond to a request thereunder.

(f) Omitted or Incorrect Markings

(1) Data delivered to the Government without either the limited rights or restricted rights notice as authorized by paragraph (g) of this clause, or the copyright notice required by paragraph (c) of this clause, shall be deemed to have been furnished with unlimited rights, and the Government assumes no liability for the disclosure, use, or reproduction of such data. However, to the extent the data has not been disclosed without restriction outside the Government, the Recipient may request, within 6 months (or a longer time approved by the

Contracting Officer for good cause shown) after delivery of such data, permission to have notices placed on qualifying data at the Recipient's expense, and the Contracting Officer may agree to do so if the Recipient—

(i) Identifies the data to which the omitted notice is to be applied;

(ii) Demonstrates that the omission of the notice was inadvertent;

(iii) Establishes that the use of the proposed notice is authorized; and

(iv) Acknowledges that the Government has no liability with respect to the disclosure, use, or reproduction of any such data made prior to the addition of the notice or resulting from the omission of the notice.

(2) The Contracting Officer may also:

(i) Permit correction at the Recipient's expense of incorrect notices if the Recipient identifies the data on which correction of the notice is to be made, and demonstrates that the correct notice is authorized; or

(ii) Correct any incorrect notices.

(g) Rights to Protected Data

(1) The Recipient may, with the concurrence of DOE, claim and mark as protected data, any data first produced in the performance of this award that would have been treated as a trade secret if developed at private expense. Any such claimed “protected data” will be clearly marked with the following Protected Rights Notice, and will be treated in accordance with such Notice, subject to the provisions of paragraphs (e) and (f) of this clause.

Protected Rights Notice

These protected data were produced under agreement no. [Enter Agreement No.] with the U.S. Department of Energy and may not be published, disseminated, or disclosed to others outside the Government until five (5) years after the date the data were first produced, unless express written authorization is obtained from the recipient. Upon expiration of the period of protection set forth in this Notice, the Government shall have unlimited rights in this data. This Notice shall be marked on any reproduction of this data, in whole or in part.

(End of notice)

(2) Any such marked Protected Data may be disclosed under obligations of confidentiality for the following purposes:



(a) For evaluation purposes under the restriction that the “Protected Data” be retained in confidence and not be further disclosed; or

(b) To subcontractors or other team members performing work under the Government's (insert name of program or other applicable activity) program of which this award is a part, for information or use in connection with the work performed under their activity, and under the restriction that the Protected Data be retained in confidence and not be further disclosed.

(3) The obligations of confidentiality and restrictions on publication and dissemination shall end for any Protected Data:

(a) At the end of the protected period;

(b) If the data becomes publicly known or available from other sources without a breach of the obligation of confidentiality with respect to the Protected Data;

(c) If the same data is independently developed by someone who did not have access to the Protected Data and such data is made available without obligations of confidentiality; or

(d) If the Recipient disseminates or authorizes another to disseminate such data without obligations of confidentiality.

(4) However, the Recipient agrees that the following types of data are not considered to be protected and shall be provided to the Government when required by this award without any claim that the data are Protected Data. The parties agree that notwithstanding the following lists of types of data, nothing precludes the Government from seeking delivery of additional data in accordance with this award, or from making publicly available additional non-protected data, nor does the following list constitute any admission by the Government that technical data not on the list is Protected Data. (Note: It is expected that this paragraph will specify certain types of mutually agreed upon data that will be available to the public and will not be asserted by the recipient/contractor as limited rights or protected data).

(5) The Government's sole obligation with respect to any protected data shall be as set forth in this paragraph (g).

(h) Protection of Limited Rights Data

When data other than that listed in paragraphs (b)(1)(i), (ii), and (iii) of this clause are specified to be delivered under this agreement and such data qualify as either limited rights data or restricted computer software, the Recipient, if the Recipient desires to continue protection of such data, shall withhold such data and not furnish them to the Government under this agreement. As a condition to this withholding the Recipient shall identify the data being withheld and furnish form, fit, and function data in lieu thereof.

(i) Subaward/Contract

The Recipient has the responsibility to obtain from its subrecipients/contractors all data and rights therein necessary to fulfill the Recipient's obligations to the Government under this agreement. If a subrecipient/contractor refuses to accept terms affording the Government such rights, the Recipient shall promptly bring such refusal to the attention of the Contracting Officer and not proceed with subaward/contract award without further authorization.

(j) Additional Data Requirements

In addition to the data specified elsewhere in this agreement to be delivered, the Contracting Officer may, at any time during agreement performance or within a period of 3 years after acceptance of all items to be delivered under this agreement, order any data first produced or specifically used in the performance of this agreement. This clause is applicable to all data ordered under this subparagraph. Nothing contained in this subparagraph shall require the Recipient to deliver any data the withholding of which is authorized by this clause or data which are specifically identified in this agreement as not subject to this clause. When data are to be delivered under this subparagraph, the Recipient will be compensated for converting the data into the prescribed form, for reproduction, and for delivery.

(k) The Recipient agrees, except as may be otherwise specified in this agreement for specific data items listed as not subject to this paragraph, that the Contracting Officer or an authorized representative may, up to three years after acceptance of all items to be delivered under this contract, inspect at the Recipient's facility any data withheld pursuant to paragraph (h) of this clause, for purposes of verifying the Recipient's assertion pertaining to the limited rights or restricted rights status of the data or for evaluating work performance. Where the Recipient whose data are to be inspected demonstrates to the Contracting Officer that there would be a possible conflict of interest if the inspection were made by a particular representative, the Contracting Officer shall designate an alternate inspector.

(End of clause)

#### **04. W(C) 2014-003 Class Patent Waiver**

(a) Definitions.

As used in this clause:

Background patent means a domestic patent covering an invention or discovery which is not a Subject Invention and which is owned or controlled by the Contractor at any time through the completion of this contract:

- (i) Which the Contractor, but not the Government, has the right to license to others without obligation to pay royalties thereon, and

- (ii) Infringement of which cannot reasonably be avoided upon the practice of any specific process, method, machine, manufacture or composition of matter (including relatively minor modifications thereof) which is a subject of the research, development, or demonstration work performed under this contract.

Contract means any contract, grant, agreement, understanding, or other arrangement, which includes research, development, or demonstration work, and includes any assignment or substitution of parties.

DOE patent waiver regulations means the Department of Energy patent waiver regulations at 10 CFR Part 784.

Invention as used in this clause, means any invention or discovery which is or may be patentable or otherwise protectable under Title 35 of the United States Code or any novel variety of plant that is or may be protectable under the Plant Variety Protection Act (7 U.S.C. 2321 *et seq.*).

Made when used in relation to any invention means the conception or first actual reduction to practice of such invention.

Nonprofit organization means a university or other institution of higher education or an organization of the type described in section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954 (26 U.S.C. 501(c)) and exempt from taxation under section 501(a) of the Internal Revenue Code (26 U.S.C. 501(a)) or any nonprofit scientific or educational organization qualified under a state nonprofit organization statute.

Patent Counsel means the Department of Energy Patent Counsel assisting the procuring activity.

Practical application means to manufacture, in the case of a composition or product; to practice, in the case of a process or method; or to operate, in the case of a machine or system; and, in each case, under such conditions as to establish that the invention is being utilized and that its benefits are, to the extent permitted by law or Government regulations, available to the public on reasonable terms.

Secretary means the Secretary of Energy.

Small business firm means a small business concern as defined at Section 2 of the Pub. L. 85-536 (15 U.S.C. 632) and implementing regulations of the Administrator of the Small Business Administration. For the purpose of this clause, the size standards for small business concerns involved in Government procurement and subcontracting at 13 CFR 121.3-8 and 13 CFR 121.3-12, respectively, will be used.

Subject invention means any invention of the Contractor conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under this contract, provided that in the case of a variety of plant, the date of determination (as defined in section 41(d) of the Plant Variety Protection Act (7 U.S.C. 2401(d)) must also occur during the period of contract performance.

(b) Allocation of principal rights.

Whereas DOE has granted a waiver of rights to subject inventions to the Contractor, the Contractor may elect to retain the entire right, title, and interest throughout the world to each subject invention subject to the provisions of this clause and 35 U.S.C. 202 and 203. With respect to any subject invention in which the Contractor elects to retain title, the Federal Government shall have a nonexclusive, nontransferable, irrevocable, paid-up license to practice or have practiced for or on behalf of the United States the subject invention throughout the world.

(c) Invention disclosure, election of title, and filing of patent applications by Contractor.

(1) The Contractor shall disclose each subject invention to the Patent Counsel within six months after conception or first actual reduction to practice, whichever occurs first in the course of or under this contract, but in any event, prior to any sale, public use, or public disclosure of such invention known to the Contractor. The disclosure to the Patent Counsel shall be in the form of a written report and shall identify the inventors and the contract under which the invention was made. It shall be sufficiently complete in technical detail to convey a clear understanding, to the extent known at the time of the disclosure, of the nature, purpose, operation, and physical, chemical, biological, or electrical characteristics of the invention. The disclosure shall also identify any publication, on sale, or public use of the invention and whether a manuscript describing the invention has been submitted for publication and, if so, whether it has been accepted for publication at the time of disclosure. In addition, after disclosure to the Patent Counsel, the Contractor shall promptly notify the Patent Counsel of the acceptance of any manuscript describing the invention for publication or of any on sale or public use planned by the Contractor.

(2) The Contractor shall elect in writing whether or not to retain title to any such invention by notifying the Patent Counsel at the time of disclosure or within 8 months of disclosure, as to those countries (including the United States) in which the Contractor will retain title; provided, that in any case where publication, on sale, or public use has initiated the 1-year statutory period wherein valid patent protection can still be obtained in the United States, the period of election of title may be shortened by the Agency to a date that is no more than 60 days prior to the end of the statutory period. The Contractor shall notify the Patent Counsel as to those countries (including the United States) in which the Contractor will retain title not later than 60 days prior to the end of the statutory period.

(3) The Contractor shall file its United States patent application on an elected invention within 1 year after election, but not later than at least 60 days prior to the end of any statutory period wherein valid patent protection can be obtained in the United States after a publication, on sale, or public use. The Contractor shall file patent applications in additional countries (including the European Patent Office and under the Patent Cooperation Treaty) within either 10 months of the corresponding initial patent application or 6 months from the date permission is granted by the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks to file foreign patent applications where foreign filing has been prohibited by a Secrecy Order.

(4) Requests for extension of the time for disclosure to the Patent Counsel, election, and filing may, at the discretion of DOE, be granted, and will normally be granted unless the Patent Counsel has reason to believe that a particular extension would prejudice the Government's interest.

(d) Conditions when the Government may obtain title notwithstanding an existing waiver.

The Contractor shall assign and hereby assigns to DOE, upon written request from DOE, title to any subject invention--

(1) If the Contractor elects not to retain title to a subject invention;

(2) If the Contractor fails to disclose or elect the subject invention within the times specified in paragraph (c) of this clause (provided that DOE may only request title within 60 days after learning of the Contractor's failure to report or elect within the specified times);

(3) In those countries in which the Contractor fails to file patent applications within the times specified in paragraph (c) of this clause; provided, however, that if the Contractor has filed a patent application in a country after the times specified in paragraph (c) of this clause, but prior to its receipt of the written request of DOE, the Contractor shall continue to retain title in that country;

(4) In any country in which the Contractor decides not to continue the prosecution of any application for, to pay the maintenance fees on, or defend in reexamination or opposition proceeding on, a patent on a subject invention;

(5) If the waiver authorizing the use of this clause is terminated as provided in paragraph (p) of this clause; or

(6) Upon a breach of paragraph (h) or paragraph (t) of this clause.

(e) Minimum rights to Contractor when the Government retains title.

(1) The Contractor shall retain a nonexclusive, royalty-free license throughout the world in each subject invention to which the Government obtains title under paragraph (d) of this clause except if the Contractor fails to disclose the subject invention within the times specified in paragraph (c) of this clause or breaches paragraph (h) or (t). The Contractor's license extends to its domestic subsidiaries and affiliates, if any, within the corporate structure of which the Contractor is a part and includes the right to grant sublicenses of the same scope to the extent the Contractor was legally obligated to do so at the time the contract was awarded. The license is transferable only with the approval of DOE except when transferred to the successor of that part of the Contractor's business to which the invention pertains.

(2) The Contractor's domestic license may be revoked or modified by DOE to the extent necessary to achieve expeditious practical application of the subject invention pursuant to an application for an exclusive license submitted in accordance with applicable provisions in 37 CFR part 404 and DOE licensing regulations. This license shall not be revoked in that field of use or the geographical areas in which the Contractor has achieved practical application and continues to make the benefits of the invention reasonably accessible to the public. The license in any foreign country may be revoked or modified at the discretion of DOE to the extent the Contractor, its licensees, or its domestic subsidiaries or affiliates have failed to achieve practical application in that foreign country.

(3) Before revocation or modification of the license, DOE shall furnish the Contractor a written notice of its intention to revoke or modify the license, and the Contractor shall be allowed 30 days (or such other time as may be authorized by DOE for good cause shown by the Contractor) after the notice to show cause why the license should not be revoked or modified. The Contractor has the right to appeal, in accordance with applicable agency licensing regulations and 37 CFR part 404 concerning the licensing of Government-owned inventions, any decision concerning the revocation or modification of its license.

(f) Contractor action to protect the Government's interest.

(1) The Contractor agrees to execute or to have executed and promptly deliver to DOE all instruments necessary to:

(i) establish or confirm the rights the Government has throughout the world in those subject inventions to which the Contractor elects to retain title, and

(ii) convey title to DOE when requested under paragraphs (d) and (n)(2) of this clause, and to enable the Government to obtain patent protection throughout the world in that subject invention.

(2) The Contractor agrees to require, by written agreement, its employees, other than clerical and nontechnical employees, to disclose promptly in writing to personnel identified as responsible for the administration of patent matters and in a format suggested by the

Contractor each subject invention made under contract in order that the Contractor can comply with the disclosure provisions of paragraph (c) of this clause, and to execute all papers necessary to file patent applications on subject inventions and to establish the Government's rights in the subject inventions. This disclosure format should require, as a minimum, the information required by paragraph (c)(1) of this clause. The Contractor shall instruct such employees through employee agreements or other suitable educational programs on the importance of reporting inventions in sufficient time to permit the filing of patent applications prior to U.S. or foreign statutory bars.

(3) The Contractor shall notify DOE of any decision not to continue the prosecution of a patent application, pay maintenance fees, or defend in a reexamination or opposition proceeding on a patent, in any country, not less than 30 days before the expiration of the response period required by the relevant patent office.

(4) The Contractor agrees to include, within the specification of any United States patent application and any patent issuing thereon covering a subject invention, the following statement: "This invention was made with Government support under (identify the contract) awarded by DOE. The Government has certain rights in this invention."

(5) The Contractor shall establish and maintain active and effective procedures to assure that subject inventions are promptly identified and disclosed to Contractor personnel responsible for patent matters within 6 months of conception and/or first actual reduction to practice, whichever occurs first in the course of or under this contract. These procedures shall include the maintenance of laboratory notebooks or equivalent records and other records as are reasonably necessary to document the conception and/or the first actual reduction to practice of subject inventions, and records that show that the procedures for identifying and disclosing the inventions are followed. Upon request, the Contractor shall furnish the Patent Counsel a description of such procedures for evaluation and for determination as to their effectiveness.

(6) The Contractor agrees, when licensing a subject invention, to arrange to avoid royalty charges on acquisitions involving Government funds, including funds derived through Military Assistance Program of the Government or otherwise derived through the Government; to refund any amounts received as royalty charges on the subject invention in acquisitions for, or on behalf of, the Government; and to provide for such refund in any instrument transferring rights in the invention to any party.

(7) The Contractor shall furnish the Patent Counsel the following:

(i) Interim reports every 12 months (or such longer period as may be specified by the Patent Counsel) from the date of the contract, listing subject inventions during that period and certifying that all subject inventions have been disclosed or that there are no such inventions.

(ii) A final report, within 3 months after completion of the contracted work, listing all subject inventions or certifying that there were no such inventions, and listing all subcontracts at any tier containing a patent rights clause or certifying that there were no such subcontracts.

(8) The Contractor shall promptly notify the Patent Counsel in writing upon the award of any subcontract at any tier containing a patent rights clause by identifying the subcontractor, the applicable patent rights clause, the work to be performed under the subcontract, and the dates of award and estimated completion. Upon request of the Patent Counsel, the Contractor shall furnish a copy of such subcontract, and no more frequently than annually, a listing of the subcontracts that have been awarded.

(9) The Contractor shall provide, upon request, the filing date, serial number and title, a copy of the patent application (including an English-language version if filed in a language other than English), and patent number and issue date for any subject invention for which the Contractor has retained title.

(10) Upon request, the Contractor shall furnish the Government an irrevocable power to inspect and make copies of the patent application file.

(g) Subcontracts.

(1) Unless otherwise directed by the Contracting Officer, the Contractor shall include the patent rights clause required by 2 CFR 910.362(b), suitably modified to identify the parties, in all subcontracts, regardless of tier, for experimental, developmental, or research work to be performed by a small business firm or nonprofit organization, except where the work of the subcontract is subject to an Exceptional Circumstances Determination by DOE. In all other subcontracts, regardless of tier, for experimental, developmental, demonstration, or research work, the Contractor shall include the patent rights clause required by 2 CFR 910.362(c), suitably modified to identify the parties.

(2) The Contractor shall not, as part of the consideration for awarding the subcontract, obtain rights in the subcontractor's subject inventions.

(3) In the case of subcontractors at any tier, the Department, the subcontractor, and Contractor agree that the mutual obligations of the parties created by this clause constitute a contract between the subcontractor and the Department with respect to those matters covered by this clause.

(4) The Contractor shall promptly notify the Contracting Officer in writing upon the award of any subcontract at any tier containing a patent rights clause by identifying the subcontractor, the applicable patent rights clause, the work to be performed under the subcontract, and the



dates of award and estimated completion. Upon request of the Contracting Officer, the Contracting Officer shall furnish a copy of such subcontract, and, no more frequently than annually, a listing of the subcontracts that have been awarded.

(h) Reporting on utilization of subject inventions.

(1) The Contractor agrees to submit on request periodic reports no more frequently than annually on the utilization of each waived subject invention or on efforts at obtaining such utilization that are being made by the Contractor and any of its licensees or assignees including compliance with paragraph (t) of this clause. Each report shall include information regarding the status of development, date of first commercial sale or use, products that embody or are made through the use of the waived such invention, manufacturing locations of such products and such other data and information as DOE may reasonably specify. The report shall further include a certification from the Contractor that the Contractor, including its licensees, is in compliance with the requirements of this clause.

(2) The Contractor also agrees to provide additional reports as may be requested by DOE in connection with any march-in proceedings undertaken by DOE in accordance with paragraph (j) of this clause.

(3) To the extent data or information supplied under this paragraph is considered by the Contractor, its licensee or assignee to be privileged and confidential and is so marked, DOE agrees that, to the extent permitted by law, it shall not disclose such information to persons outside the Government.

(i) Preference for United States industry.

Notwithstanding any other provision of this clause, the Contractor agrees that neither it nor any assignee will grant to any person the exclusive right to use or sell any subject invention in the United States unless such person agrees that any products embodying the subject invention will be manufactured substantially in the United States. However, in individual cases, the requirement for such an agreement may be waived by DOE upon a showing by the Contractor or its assignee that reasonable but unsuccessful efforts have been made to grant licenses on similar terms to potential licensees that would be likely to manufacture substantially in the United States or that under the circumstances domestic manufacture is not commercially feasible.

(j) March-in rights.

The Contractor agrees that with respect to any subject invention in which it has acquired title, DOE has the right in accordance with the procedures in 48 CFR 27.304-1(g) to require the Contractor, an assignee, or exclusive licensee of a subject invention to grant a nonexclusive, partially exclusive, or exclusive license in any field of use to a responsible applicant or

applicants, upon terms that are reasonable under the circumstances, and if the Contractor, assignee, or exclusive licensee refuses such a request, DOE has the right to grant such a license itself if DOE determines that--

(1) Such action is necessary because the Contractor or assignee has not taken, or is not expected to take within a reasonable time, effective steps to achieve practical application of the subject invention in such field of use;

(2) Such action is necessary to alleviate health or safety needs which are not reasonably satisfied by the Contractor, assignee, or their licensees;

(3) Such action is necessary to meet requirements for public use specified by Federal regulations and such requirements are not reasonably satisfied by the Contractor, assignee, or licensees; or

(4) Such action is necessary because the agreement required by paragraph (i) of this clause has not been obtained or waived or because a licensee of the exclusive right to use or sell any subject invention in the United States is in breach of such agreement.

(k) Background Patents [reserved]

(l) Communications.

All reports and notifications required by this clause shall be submitted to the Patent Counsel unless otherwise instructed.

(m) Other inventions.

Nothing contained in this clause shall be deemed to grant to the Government any rights with respect to any invention other than a subject invention, except with respect to Background Patents, above.

(n) Examination of records relating to inventions.

(1) The Contracting Officer or any authorized representative shall, until 3 years after final payment under this contract, have the right to examine any books (including laboratory notebooks), records, and documents of the Contractor relating to the conception or first actual reduction to practice of inventions in the same field of technology as the work under this contract to determine whether--

(i) Any such inventions are subject inventions;

(ii) The Contractor has established and maintains the procedures required by paragraphs (f)(2) and (f)(5) of this clause; and

(iii) The Contractor and its inventor have complied with the procedures.

(2) If the Contracting Officer determines that an inventor has not disclosed a subject invention to the Contractor in accordance with the procedures required by paragraph (f)(5) of this clause, the Contracting Officer may, within 60 days after the determination, request title in accordance with paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this clause. However, if the Contractor establishes that the failure to disclose did not result from the Contractor's fault or negligence, the Contracting Officer shall not request title.

(3) If the Contracting Officer learns of an unreported Contractor invention which the Contracting Officer believes may be a subject invention, the Contractor may be required to disclose the invention to DOE for a determination of ownership rights.

(4) Any examination of records under this paragraph shall be conducted in such a manner as to protect the confidentiality of the information involved.

(o) Withholding of payment.

NOTE: This paragraph does not apply to subcontracts or grants.

(1) Any time before final payment under this contract, the Contracting Officer may, in the Government's interest, withhold payment until a reserve not exceeding \$50,000 or 5 percent of the amount of the contract, whichever is less, shall have been set aside if, in the Contracting Officer's opinion, the Contractor fails to--

- (i) Establish, maintain, and follow effective procedures for identifying and disclosing subject inventions pursuant to paragraph (f)(5) of this clause;
- (ii) Disclose any subject invention pursuant to paragraph (c)(1) of this clause;
- (iii) Deliver acceptable interim reports pursuant to paragraph (f)(7)(I) of this clause;
- (iv) Provide the information regarding subcontracts pursuant to paragraph (f)(6) of this clause; or
- (v) Convey to the Government, using a DOE-approved form, the title and/or rights of the Government in each subject invention as required by this clause.

(2) Such reserve or balance shall be withheld until the Contracting Officer has determined that the Contractor has rectified whatever deficiencies exist and has delivered all reports, disclosures, and other information required by this clause.

(3) Final payment under this contract shall not be made before the Contractor delivers to the Patent Counsel all disclosures of subject inventions required by paragraph (c)(1) of this clause, an acceptable final report pursuant to paragraph (f)(7)(ii) of this clause, and all past due confirmatory instruments, and the Patent Counsel has issued a patent clearance certification to the Contracting Officer.

(4) The Contracting Officer may decrease or increase the sums withheld up to the maximum authorized above. If the maximum amount authorized above is already being withheld under other provisions of the contract, no additional amount shall be withheld under this paragraph. The withholding of any amount or the subsequent payment thereof shall not be construed as a waiver of any Government right.

(p) Waiver Terminations.

Any waiver granted to the Contractor authorizing the use of this clause (including any retention of rights pursuant thereto by the Contractor under paragraph (b) of this clause) may be terminated at the discretion of the Secretary or his designee in whole or in part, if the request for waiver by the Contractor is found to contain false material statements or nondisclosure of material facts, and such were specifically relied upon by DOE in reaching the waiver determination or the cost share requirement as set forth in the applicable statement of considerations is not met. Prior to any such termination, the Contractor will be given written notice stating the extent of such proposed termination and the reasons therefor, and a period of 30 days, or such longer period as the Secretary or his designee shall determine for good cause shown in writing, to show cause why the waiver of rights should not be so terminated. Any waiver termination shall be subject to the Contractor's minimum license as provided in paragraph (e) of this clause.

(q) Atomic Energy.

No claim for pecuniary award or compensation under the provisions of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, shall be asserted by the Contractor or its employees with respect to any invention or discovery made or conceived in the course of or under this contract.

(r) Publication.

It is recognized that during the course of work under this contract, the contractor or its employees may from time to time desire to release or publish information regarding scientific or technical developments conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under this contract. In order that public disclosure of such information will not adversely affect the patent interests of DOE or the contractor, approval for release of publication shall be secured from Patent Counsel prior to any such release or publication. In appropriate circumstances, and after consultation with the contractor, Patent Counsel may waive the right of prepublication review.

(s) Forfeiture of rights in unreported subject inventions.

(1) The contractor shall forfeit and assign to the Government, at the request of the Secretary of Energy or designee, all rights in any subject invention which the contractor fails to report to Patent Counsel within six months after the time the contractor:

- (i) Files or causes to be filed a United States or foreign patent application thereon; or

(ii) Submits the final report required by paragraph (f)(7)(ii) of this clause, whichever is later.

(2) However, the Contractor shall not forfeit rights in a subject invention if, within the time specified in paragraph (n)(1) of this clause, the contractor:

(i) Prepares a written decision based upon a review of the record that the invention was neither conceived nor first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under the contract and delivers the decision to Patent Counsel, with a copy to the Contracting Officer; or

(ii) Contending that the subject invention is not a subject invention, the contractor nevertheless discloses the subject invention and all facts pertinent to this contention to the Patent Counsel, with a copy to the Contracting Officer, or

(iii) Establishes that the failure to disclose did not result from the contractor's fault or negligence.

(3) Pending written assignment of the patent application and patents on a subject invention determined by the Contracting Officer to be forfeited (such determination to be a Final Decision under the Disputes clause of this contract), the contractor shall be deemed to hold the invention and the patent applications and patents pertaining thereto in trust for the Government. The forfeiture provision of this paragraph shall be in addition to and shall not supersede any other rights and remedies which the Government may have with respect to subject inventions.

(t) U. S. Competitiveness

The Contractor agrees that any products embodying any waived invention or produced through the use of any waived invention will be manufactured substantially in the United States, unless the Contractor can show to the satisfaction of DOE that it is not commercially feasible to do so. In the event DOE agrees to foreign manufacture, there will be a requirement that the Government's support of the technology be recognized in some appropriate manner, e.g., recoument of the Government's investment, etc. The Contractor further agrees to make the above condition binding on any assignee or licensee or any entity otherwise acquiring rights to any waived invention, including subsequent assignees or licensees. Should the Contractor or other such entity receiving rights in any waived invention undergo a change in ownership amounting to a controlling interest, then the waiver, assignment, license, or other transfer of rights in any waived invention is suspended until approved in writing by DOE.

(End of clause)



**Grant and Cooperative Agreement  
Research, Development, or Demonstration  
Non-Federal Entity  
(State, Local government, Indian tribe, Institution of higher education,  
or Nonprofit organization)**

A Non-Federal Entity is subject to the intellectual property requirements at 2 CFR 200.315.

**2 CFR 200.315 Intangible Property**

(a) Title to intangible property (see §200.59 Intangible property) acquired under a Federal award vests upon acquisition in the non-Federal entity. The non-Federal entity must use that property for the originally-authorized purpose, and must not encumber the property without approval of the Federal awarding agency. When no longer needed for the originally authorized purpose, disposition of the intangible property must occur in accordance with the provisions in §200.313 Equipment paragraph (e).

(b) The non-Federal entity may copyright any work that is subject to copyright and was developed, or for which ownership was acquired, under a Federal award. The Federal awarding agency reserves a royalty-free, nonexclusive and irrevocable right to reproduce, publish, or otherwise use the work for Federal purposes, and to authorize others to do so.

(c) The non-Federal entity is subject to applicable regulations governing patents and inventions, including governmentwide regulations issued by the Department of Commerce at 37 CFR Part 401, "Rights to Inventions Made by Nonprofit Organizations and Small Business Firms Under Government Awards, Contracts and Cooperative Agreements."

(d) The Federal government has the right to:

(1) Obtain, reproduce, publish, or otherwise use the data produced under a Federal award;  
and

(2) Authorize others to receive, reproduce, publish, or otherwise use such data for Federal purposes.

(e) Freedom of Information Act (FOIA).

(1) In response to a Freedom of Information Act (FOIA) request for research data relating to published research findings produced under a Federal award that were used by the Federal government in developing an agency action that has the force and effect of law, the Federal

awarding agency must request, and the non-Federal entity must provide, within a reasonable time, the research data so that they can be made available to the public through the procedures established under the FOIA. If the Federal awarding agency obtains the research data solely in response to a FOIA request, the Federal awarding agency may charge the requester a reasonable fee equaling the full incremental cost of obtaining the research data. This fee should reflect costs incurred by the Federal agency and the non-Federal entity. This fee is in addition to any fees the Federal awarding agency may assess under the FOIA (5 U.S.C. 552(a)(4)(A)).

(2) Published research findings means when:

(i) Research findings are published in a peer-reviewed scientific or technical journal; or

(ii) A Federal agency publicly and officially cites the research findings in support of an agency action that has the force and effect of law. “Used by the Federal government in developing an agency action that has the force and effect of law” is defined as when an agency publicly and officially cites the research findings in support of an agency action that has the force and effect of law.

(3) Research data means the recorded factual material commonly accepted in the scientific community as necessary to validate research findings, but not any of the following: preliminary analyses, drafts of scientific papers, plans for future research, peer reviews, or communications with colleagues. This “recorded” material excludes physical objects (e.g., laboratory samples). Research data also do not include:

(i) Trade secrets, commercial information, materials necessary to be held confidential by a researcher until they are published, or similar information which is protected under law; and

(ii) Personnel and medical information and similar information the disclosure of which would constitute a clearly unwarranted invasion of personal privacy, such as information that could be used to identify a particular person in a research study.

### **37 CFR 401.14 Standard Patent Rights Clauses**

(a) The following is the standard patent rights clause to be used as specified in §401.3(a).

#### *Patent Rights (Small Business Firms and Nonprofit Organizations)*

(a) Definitions

(1) *Invention* means any invention or discovery which is or may be patentable or otherwise protectable under Title 35 of the United States Code, or any novel variety of plant which is or may be protected under the Plant Variety Protection Act (7 U.S.C. 2321 *et seq.*).

(2) *Subject invention* means any invention of the *contractor* conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the performance of work under this *contract*, provided that in the case of a variety of plant, the date of determination (as defined in section 41(d) of the Plant Variety Protection Act, 7 U.S.C. 2401(d)) must also occur during the period of *contract* performance.

(3) *Practical Application* means to manufacture in the case of a composition or product, to practice in the case of a process or method, or to operate in the case of a machine or system; and, in each case, under such conditions as to establish that the invention is being utilized and that its benefits are, to the extent permitted by law or government regulations, available to the public on reasonable terms.

(4) *Made* when used in relation to any invention means the conception or first actual reduction to practice of such invention.

(5) *Small Business Firm* means a small business concern as defined at section 2 of Pub. L. 85-536 (15 U.S.C. 632) and implementing regulations of the Administrator of the Small Business Administration. For the purpose of this clause, the size standards for small business concerns involved in government procurement and subcontracting at 13 CFR 121.3-8 and 13 CFR 121.3-12, respectively, will be used.

(6) *Nonprofit Organization* means a university or other institution of higher education or an organization of the type described in section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954 (26 U.S.C. 501(c) and exempt from taxation under section 501(a) of the Internal Revenue Code (25 U.S.C. 501(a)) or any nonprofit scientific or educational organization qualified under a state nonprofit organization statute.

#### (b) Allocation of Principal Rights

The *Contractor* may retain the entire right, title, and interest throughout the world to each subject invention subject to the provisions of this clause and 35 U.S.C. 203. With respect to any subject invention in which the *Contractor* retains title, the Federal government shall have a nonexclusive, nontransferable, irrevocable, paid-up license to practice or have practiced for or on behalf of the United States the subject invention throughout the world.

#### (c) Invention Disclosure, Election of Title and Filing of Patent Application by *Contractor*

(1) The *contractor* will disclose each subject invention to the *Federal Agency* within two months after the inventor discloses it in writing to *contractor* personnel responsible for patent matters. The disclosure to the agency shall be in the form of a written report and shall identify the *contract* under which the invention was made and the inventor(s). It shall be sufficiently complete in technical detail to convey a clear understanding to the extent known at the time of the disclosure, of the nature, purpose, operation, and the physical, chemical, biological or electrical characteristics of the invention. The disclosure shall also identify any publication, on sale or public use of the invention and whether a manuscript describing the invention has been



submitted for publication and, if so, whether it has been accepted for publication at the time of disclosure. In addition, after disclosure to the *agency*, the *Contractor* will promptly notify the *agency* of the acceptance of any manuscript describing the invention for publication or of any on sale or public use planned by the *contractor*.

(2) The *Contractor* will elect in writing whether or not to retain title to any such invention by notifying the *Federal agency* within two years of disclosure to the *Federal agency*. However, in any case where publication, on sale or public use has initiated the one year statutory period wherein valid patent protection can still be obtained in the United States, the period for election of title may be shortened by the *agency* to a date that is no more than 60 days prior to the end of the statutory period.

(3) The *contractor* will file its initial patent application on a subject invention to which it elects to retain title within one year after election of title or, if earlier, prior to the end of any statutory period wherein valid patent protection can be obtained in the United States after a publication, on sale, or public use. The *contractor* will file patent applications in additional countries or international patent offices within either ten months of the corresponding initial patent application or six months from the date permission is granted by the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks to file foreign patent applications where such filing has been prohibited by a Secrecy Order.

(4) Requests for extension of the time for disclosure, election, and filing under subparagraphs (1), (2), and (3) may, at the discretion of the *agency*, be granted.

#### (d) Conditions When the Government May Obtain Title

The *contractor* will convey to the *Federal agency*, upon written request, title to any subject invention—

(1) If the *contractor* fails to disclose or elect title to the subject invention within the times specified in (c), above, or elects not to retain title; provided that the *agency* may only request title within 60 days after learning of the failure of the *contractor* to disclose or elect within the specified times.

(2) In those countries in which the *contractor* fails to file patent applications within the times specified in (c) above; provided, however, that if the *contractor* has filed a patent application in a country after the times specified in (c) above, but prior to its receipt of the written request of the *Federal agency*, the *contractor* shall continue to retain title in that country.

(3) In any country in which the *contractor* decides not to continue the prosecution of any application for, to pay the maintenance fees on, or defend in reexamination or opposition proceeding on, a patent on a subject invention.

(e) Minimum Rights to *Contractor* and Protection of the *Contractor* Right to File

(1) The *contractor* will retain a nonexclusive royalty-free license throughout the world in each subject invention to which the Government obtains title, except if the *contractor* fails to disclose the invention within the times specified in (c), above. The *contractor's* license extends to its domestic subsidiary and affiliates, if any, within the corporate structure of which the *contractor* is a party and includes the right to grant sublicenses of the same scope to the extent the *contractor* was legally obligated to do so at the time the *contract* was awarded. The license is transferable only with the approval of the *Federal agency* except when transferred to the successor of that party of the *contractor's* business to which the invention pertains.

(2) The *contractor's* domestic license may be revoked or modified by the *funding Federal agency* to the extent necessary to achieve expeditious practical application of the subject invention pursuant to an application for an exclusive license submitted in accordance with applicable provisions at 37 CFR part 404 and *agency* licensing regulations (if any). This license will not be revoked in that field of use or the geographical areas in which the *contractor* has achieved practical application and continues to make the benefits of the invention reasonably accessible to the public. The license in any foreign country may be revoked or modified at the discretion of the *funding Federal agency* to the extent the *contractor*, its licensees, or the domestic subsidiaries or affiliates have failed to achieve practical application in that foreign country.

(3) Before revocation or modification of the license, the *funding Federal agency* will furnish the *contractor* a written notice of its intention to revoke or modify the license, and the *contractor* will be allowed thirty days (or such other time as may be authorized by the *funding Federal agency* for good cause shown by the *contractor*) after the notice to show cause why the license should not be revoked or modified. The *contractor* has the right to appeal, in accordance with applicable regulations in 37 CFR part 404 and *agency* regulations (if any) concerning the licensing of Government-owned inventions, any decision concerning the revocation or modification of the license.

(f) *Contractor* Action to Protect the Government's Interest

(1) The *contractor* agrees to execute or to have executed and promptly deliver to the *Federal agency* all instruments necessary to (i) establish or confirm the rights the Government has throughout the world in those subject inventions to which the *contractor* elects to retain title, and (ii) convey title to the *Federal agency* when requested under paragraph (d) above and to enable the government to obtain patent protection throughout the world in that subject invention.

(2) The *contractor* agrees to require, by written agreement, its employees, other than clerical and nontechnical employees, to disclose promptly in writing to personnel identified as responsible for the administration of patent matters and in a format suggested by the *contractor* each subject invention made under *contract* in order that the *contractor* can

comply with the disclosure provisions of paragraph (c), above, and to execute all papers necessary to file patent applications on subject inventions and to establish the government's rights in the subject inventions. This disclosure format should require, as a minimum, the information required by (c)(1), above. The *contractor* shall instruct such employees through employee agreements or other suitable educational programs on the importance of reporting inventions in sufficient time to permit the filing of patent applications prior to U.S. or foreign statutory bars.

(3) The *contractor* will notify the *Federal agency* of any decisions not to continue the prosecution of a patent application, pay maintenance fees, or defend in a reexamination or opposition proceeding on a patent, in any country, not less than thirty days before the expiration of the response period required by the relevant patent office.

(4) The *contractor* agrees to include, within the specification of any United States patent applications and any patent issuing thereon covering a subject invention, the following statement, "This invention was made with government support under (identify the *contract*) awarded by (identify the Federal agency). The government has certain rights in the invention."

#### (g) Subcontracts

(1) The *contractor* will include this clause, suitably modified to identify the parties, in all subcontracts, regardless of tier, for experimental, developmental or research work to be performed by a small business firm or domestic nonprofit organization. The subcontractor will retain all rights provided for the *contractor* in this clause, and the *contractor* will not, as part of the consideration for awarding the subcontract, obtain rights in the subcontractor's subject inventions.

(2) The *contractor* will include in all other subcontracts, regardless of tier, for experimental developmental or research work the patent rights clause required by 2 CFR 910.362(c)

(3) In the case of subcontracts, at any tier, when the prime award with the Federal agency was a contract (but not a grant or cooperative agreement), the *agency*, subcontractor, and the contractor agree that the mutual obligations of the parties created by this clause constitute a contract between the subcontractor and the Federal agency with respect to the matters covered by the clause; provided, however, that nothing in this paragraph is intended to confer any jurisdiction under the Contract Disputes Act in connection with proceedings under paragraph (j) of this clause.

#### (h) Reporting on Utilization of Subject Inventions

The *Contractor* agrees to submit on request periodic reports no more frequently than annually on the utilization of a subject invention or on efforts at obtaining such utilization that are being made by the *contractor* or its licensees or assignees. Such reports shall include information regarding the status of development, date of first commercial sale or use, gross

royalties received by the contractor, and such other data and information as the *agency* may reasonably specify. The *contractor* also agrees to provide additional reports as may be requested by the *agency* in connection with any march-in proceeding undertaken by the *agency* in accordance with paragraph (j) of this clause. As required by 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(5), the *agency* agrees it will not disclose such information to persons outside the government without permission of the *contractor*.

(i) Preference for United States Industry

Notwithstanding any other provision of this clause, the *contractor* agrees that neither it nor any assignee will grant to any person the exclusive right to use or sell any subject inventions in the United States unless such person agrees that any products embodying the subject invention or produced through the use of the subject invention will be manufactured substantially in the United States. However, in individual cases, the requirement for such an agreement may be waived by the *Federal agency* upon a showing by the *contractor* or its assignee that reasonable but unsuccessful efforts have been made to grant licenses on similar terms to potential licensees that would be likely to manufacture substantially in the United States or that under the circumstances domestic manufacture is not commercially feasible.

(j) March-in Rights

The *contractor* agrees that with respect to any subject invention in which it has acquired title, the *Federal agency* has the right in accordance with the procedures in 37 CFR 401.6 and any supplemental regulations of the *agency* to require the *contractor*, an assignee or exclusive licensee of a subject invention to grant a nonexclusive, partially exclusive, or exclusive license in any field of use to a responsible applicant or applicants, upon terms that are reasonable under the circumstances, and if the *contractor*, assignee, or exclusive licensee refuses such a request the *Federal agency* has the right to grant such a license itself if the *Federal agency* determines that:

(1) Such action is necessary because the *contractor* or assignee has not taken, or is not expected to take within a reasonable time, effective steps to achieve practical application of the subject invention in such field of use.

(2) Such action is necessary to alleviate health or safety needs which are not reasonably satisfied by the *contractor*, assignee or their licensees;

(3) Such action is necessary to meet requirements for public use specified by Federal regulations and such requirements are not reasonably satisfied by the *contractor*, assignee or licensees; or

(4) Such action is necessary because the agreement required by paragraph (i) of this clause has not been obtained or waived or because a licensee of the exclusive right to use or sell any subject invention in the United States is in breach of such agreement.

(k) Special Provisions for *Contracts* with Nonprofit Organizations

If the *contractor* is a nonprofit organization, it agrees that:

(1) Rights to a subject invention in the United States may not be assigned without the approval of the *Federal agency*, except where such assignment is made to an organization which has as one of its primary functions the management of inventions, provided that such assignee will be subject to the same provisions as the *contractor*;

(2) The *contractor* will share royalties collected on a subject invention with the inventor, including Federal employee co-inventors (when the agency deems it appropriate) when the subject invention is assigned in accordance with 35 U.S.C. 202(e) and 37 CFR 401.10;

(3) The balance of any royalties or income earned by the *contractor* with respect to subject inventions, after payment of expenses (including payments to inventors) incidental to the administration of subject inventions, will be utilized for the support of scientific research or education; and

(4) It will make efforts that are reasonable under the circumstances to attract licensees of subject invention that are small business firms and that it will give a preference to a small business firm when licensing a subject invention if the *contractor* determines that the small business firm has a plan or proposal for marketing the invention which, if executed, is equally as likely to bring the invention to practical application as any plans or proposals from applicants that are not small business firms; provided, that the *contractor* is also satisfied that the small business firm has the capability and resources to carry out its plan or proposal. The decision whether to give a preference in any specific case will be at the discretion of the *contractor*. However, the *contractor* agrees that the Secretary may review the *contractor's* licensing program and decisions regarding small business applicants, and the *contractor* will negotiate changes to its licensing policies, procedures, or practices with the Secretary when the Secretary's review discloses that the *contractor* could take reasonable steps to implement more effectively the requirements of this paragraph (k)(4).

(l) Communication

(Complete According to Instructions at 401.5(b))



Intellectual property rights are subject to 2 CFR 200.315 or 910.362.

---